

Spoken English

Learned Quickly

LESSONS

Pages 1.1 through 16.39

APPENDIX INFORMATION

Information for the Student	A.1
Assignment Calendar	B.2
See More	C.1
Coming to the United States	D.1
The Journey of a Wise Man: A fable for English learners	E.1
A Wise Man's Discovery: A fable for English learners	F.1
Index of Tables	G.1
Vocabulary for Lessons 1-16	H.1
Common Irregular Verbs	I.1
More spoken English Study	J.1
Lesson Page Icons and Text Notations	K.1

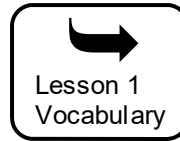
Spoken English

Learned Quickly

Lessons

Lesson 1: English Sentences	1.1
Lesson 2: Exercise Lesson	2.1
Lesson 3: Exercise Lesson	3.1
Lesson 4: Pronunciation Lesson	4.1
Lesson 5: Review Lesson	5.1
Lesson 6: Exercise Lesson	6.1
Lesson 7: Exercise Lesson	7.1
Lesson 8: Exercise Lesson	8.1
Lesson 9: Exercise Lesson	9.1
Lesson 10: Pronunciation Lesson	10.1
Lesson 11: Exercise Lesson	11.1
Lesson 12: Exercise Lesson	12.1
Lesson 13: Exercise Lesson	13.1
Lesson 14: Exercise Lesson	14.1
Lesson 15: Pronunciation Lesson	15.1
Lesson 16: Exercise Lesson	16.1

LESSON 1: ENGLISH SENTENCES



ls1a.mp3

Listen to the example.



ls1ab.mp3

Hello. (Hello.)

How are you? (How are you?)

Fine. (Fine.)

Fine, thank you. (Fine, thank you.)

Okay, thanks. (Okay, thanks.)

Good morning. (Good morning.)

Good afternoon. (Good afternoon.)

Good evening. (Good evening.)

Excuse me. (Excuse me.)

What time is it? (What time is it?)

It is 2 o'clock. (It is 2 o'clock.)

Thank you. (Thank you.)

My name is John. (My name is John.)

What is your name? (What is your name?)

Do you live here? (Do you live here?)

Yes, I live here. (Yes, I live here.)

Do you speak English? (Do you speak English?)

I speak a little English. (I speak a little English.)

Have you lived here long? (Have you lived here long?)

I have lived here two years. (I have lived here two years.)

Thank you. (Thank you.)

Goodbye. (Goodbye.)

1.1 Repeat each sentence.



- 1.1a Hello. (Hello.)
- 1.1b How are you? (How are you?)
- 1.1c Fine. (Fine.)
- 1.1d Fine, thank you. (Fine, thank you.)
- 1.1e Okay, thanks. (Okay, thanks.)
- 1.1f Good morning. (Good morning.)
- 1.1g Good afternoon. (Good afternoon.)
- 1.1h Good evening. (Good evening.)
- 1.1i Excuse me. (Excuse me.)
- 1.1j What time is it? (What time is it?)
- 1.1k It is 2 o'clock. (It is 2 o'clock.)
- 1.1l Thank you. (Thank you.)
- 1.1m My name is John. (My name is John.)
- 1.1n What is your name? (What is your name?)
- 1.1o Do you live here? (Do you live here?)
- 1.1p Yes, I live here. (Yes, I live here.)
- 1.1q Do you speak English? (Do you speak English?)
- 1.1r I speak a little English. (I speak a little English.)
- 1.1s Have you lived here long? (Have you lived here long?)
- 1.1t I have lived here two years. (I have lived here two years.)
- 1.1u Thank you. (Thank you.)
- 1.1v Goodbye. (Goodbye.)

Listen to the example.



ls1b.mp3

Hello, how are you? (Hello, how are you?)

Fine, thank you. (Fine, thank you.)

Okay, thanks. (Okay, thanks.)

Are you sick? (Are you sick?)

No, I am not sick, but I hurt my arm. (No, I am not sick, but I hurt my arm.)

Is your child sick? (Is your child sick?)

No, my child is not sick. (No, my child is not sick.)

Do you live here in the city? (Do you live here in the city?)

Yes, I live here. (Yes, I live here.)



ls1bb.mp3

1.2 Repeat each sentence.



1.2a Hello, how are you? (Hello, how are you?)

1.2b Fine, thank you. (Fine, thank you.)

1.2c Okay, thanks. (Okay, thanks.)

1.2d Are you sick? (Are you sick?)

1.2e No, I am not sick, but I hurt my arm. (No, I am not sick, but I hurt my arm.)

1.2f Is your child sick? (Is your child sick?)

1.2g No, my child is not sick. (No, my child is not sick.)

1.2h Do you live here in the city? (Do you live here in the city?)

1.2i Yes, I live here. (Yes, I live here.)

1.2j What kind of work do you do? (What kind of work do you do?)

1.2k I work in a store. (I work in a store.)

1.2l Do you have a phone? (Do you have a phone?)

1.2m Yes, I have a phone. (Yes, I have a phone.)

1.2n May I call you? (May I call you?)

1.2o Yes, you may call me. (Yes, you may call me.)

1.2p Thank you. Goodbye. (Thank you. Goodbye.)

1.2q Goodbye. (Goodbye.)

Listen to the Example.



Hello, how are you? (Hello, how are you?) / Hi, how are you? (Hi, how are you?) / Hello. (Hello.) / Hi. (Hi.)

Fine, thank you. (Fine, thank you.) / Fine, thanks. (Fine, thanks.) / Okay, thanks. (Okay, thanks.) / Okay. (Okay.)

How are you? (How are you?) / Fine, thanks. And you? (Fine, thanks. And you?)

Do you live here? (Do you live here?) / Do you live here in the city? (Do you live here in the city?) / Are you from this city? (Are you from this city?)

Where do you work? (Where do you work?) / What kind of work do you do? (What kind of work do you do?) / What do you do? (What do you do?)

1.3 Repeat each sentence.



- 1.3a Hello, how are you? (Hello, how are you?) / Hi, how are you? (Hi, how are you?) / Hello. (Hello.) / Hi. (Hi.)
- 1.3b Fine, thank you. (Fine, thank you.) / Fine, thanks. (Fine, thanks.) / Okay, thanks. (Okay, thanks.) / Okay. (Okay.)
- 1.3c How are you? (How are you?) / Fine, thanks. And you? (Fine, thanks. And you?)
- 1.3d Do you live here? (Do you live here?) / Do you live here in the city? (Do you live here in the city?) / Are you from this city? (Are you from this city?)
- 1.3e Where do you work? (Where do you work?) / What kind of work do you do? (What kind of work do you do?) / What do you do? (What do you do?)
- 1.3f Where do you live? (Where do you live?)
- 1.3g What is your address? (What is your address?)
- 1.3h Is this your current address? (Is this your current address?)
- 1.3i Do you have a phone? (Do you have a phone?) / May I call you? (May I call you?) / Can I reach you by phone? (Can I reach you by phone?)

1.3j May I see your driver's license? (May I see your driver's license?) / Do you have any ID? (Do you have any ID?) / May I see some personal identification? (May I see some personal identification?)



ls1c.mp3

1.4 Say your name after each sentence.



ls1cb.mp3

1.4a My name is _____. (My name is _____.)

1.4b Hello, my name is _____. (Hello, my name is _____.)

1.4c Hi, my name is _____. (Hi, my name is _____.)

1.4d I'm glad to know you. My name is _____. (I'm glad to know you. My name is _____.)

1.5 Repeat each number.



0 [zero]

1 [one]

2 [two]

3 [three]

4 [four]

5 [five]

6 [six]

7 [seven]

8 [eight]

9 [nine]

10 [ten]

11 [eleven]

12 [twelve]

13 [thirteen]

14 [fourteen]

15 [fifteen]

16 [sixteen]

17 [seventeen]

18 [eighteen]

19 [nineteen]

20 [twenty]

30 [thirty]

40 [forty]

50 [fifty]

60 [sixty]

70 [seventy]

80 [eighty]

90 [ninety]

100 [one hundred]

1,000 [one thousand]

1.6 Repeat each sentence.



1.6a Is this an emergency? (Is this an emergency?)

1.6b This is an emergency. (This is an emergency.) / This is not an emergency.
(This is not an emergency.)

1.6c This is a medical emergency. (This is a medical emergency.) / This is not a
medical emergency. (This is not a medical emergency.)

1.6d Please call 911. (Please call 911.) / Call the police. (Call the
police.) / Call an ambulance. (Call an ambulance.) / Call the fire
department. (Call the fire department.)

1.6e Please help me. (Please help me.) / Help me. (Help me.) / Help. (Help.)

1.6f I am hurt. (I am hurt.) / I'm hurt. (I'm hurt.) / I'm not hurt. (I'm not hurt.)

1.6g My car will not start. (My car will not start.) / My car won't start. (My car
won't start.) / My car is out of gas. (My car is out of gas.) / Where is the
closest gas station? (Where is the closest gas station?)

- 1.6h What is your license number? (What is your license number?)
- 1.6i My child is sick. (My child is sick.) / My arm is hurt. (My arm is hurt.) / My wife is sick. (My wife is sick.) / My husband is hurt. (My husband is hurt.)
- 1.6j Which hospital do you want to go to? (What hospital do you want to go to?)
- 1.6k Do you have insurance? (Do you have insurance?) / What is your health card number? (What is your health card number?)
- 1.6l How do you want to pay? (How do you want to pay?) / Will you pay with cash? (Will you pay with cash?) / Will you pay by check? (Will you pay by check?) / Will you pay with a credit card? (Will you pay with a credit card?)
- 1.6m How much will this cost? (How much will this cost?) / I do not have that much money. (I do not have that much money.)
- 1.6n Which bus do I take? (Which bus do I take?) / Is this the right bus stop? (Is this the right bus stop?) / Where is the closest bus stop? (Where is the closest bus stop?)
- 1.6o Where can I find ? (Where can I find ?) / You will find it there. (You will find it there.)

1.6p Is the office open? (Is the office open?) / No, the office is closed. (No, the office is closed.) / When will the office open? (When will the office open?) / It will open at 8:30. (It will open at 8:30.)



ls1d.mp3

1.7 Say each letter of the alphabet.



ls1db.mp3

A / a B / b C / c D / d E / e F / f G / g
H / h I / i J / j K / k L / l M / m N / n
O / o P / p Q / q R / r S / s T / t U / u
V / v W / w X / x Y / y Z / z

1.8 Repeat each sentence.



1.8a Can you tell me where the store is? (Can you tell me where the store is?)

1.8b Can you tell me where the bathroom is? (Can you tell me where the bathroom is?)

1.8c Can you tell me where to find groceries? (Can you tell me where to find groceries?)

1.8d How much does it cost? (How much does it cost?)

1.8e How much do I owe you? (How much do I owe you?)

1.8f What time is it? (What time is it?)

Listen to the example.



Can you tell me where the store is? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where the store is?)

Excuse me. Can you tell me where the store is? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where the store is?)

Can you tell me where the bathroom is? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where the bathroom is?)

Excuse me. Can you tell me where the bathroom is? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where the bathroom is?)

Can you tell me where to find groceries? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where to find groceries?) Excuse me. Can you tell me where to find groceries? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where to find groceries?)

How much does it cost? (Excuse me. How much does it cost?) Excuse me. How much does it cost? (Excuse me. How much does it cost?)

1.9 Repeat each sentence after saying, "Excuse me."



1.9a Can you tell me where the store is? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where the store is?) Excuse me. Can you tell me where the store is? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where the store is?)

- 1.9b Can you tell me where the bathroom is? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where the bathroom is?) Excuse me. Can you tell me where the bathroom is?
(Excuse me. Can you tell me where the bathroom is?)
- 1.9c Can you tell me where to find groceries? (Excuse me. Can you tell me where to find groceries?) Excuse me. Can you tell me where to find groceries?
(Excuse me. Can you tell me where to find groceries?)
- 1.9d How much does it cost? (Excuse me. How much does it cost?) Excuse me.
How much does it cost? (Excuse me. How much does it cost?)
- 1.9e How much do I owe you? (Excuse me. How much do I owe you?) Excuse
me. How much do I owe you? (Excuse me. How much do I owe you?)
- 1.9f What time is it? (Excuse me. What time is it?) Excuse me. What time is it?
(Excuse me. What time is it?)
- 1.9g Is this an emergency? (Excuse me. Is this an emergency?) Excuse me. Is
this an emergency? (Excuse me. Is this an emergency?)
- 1.9h Do you have a driver's license? (Excuse me. Do you have a driver's license?)
Excuse me. Do you have a driver's license? (Excuse me. Do you have a
driver's license?)
- 1.9i Is your arm hurt? (Excuse me. Is your arm hurt?)
Excuse me. Is your arm hurt? (Excuse me. Is your arm hurt?)

- 1.9j Where is the closest bus stop? (Excuse me. Where is the closest bus stop?)
Excuse me. Where is the closest bus stop? (Excuse me. Where is the closest bus stop?)



ls1e.mp3

1.10 **Answer each question.**

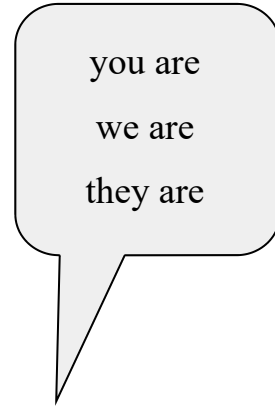
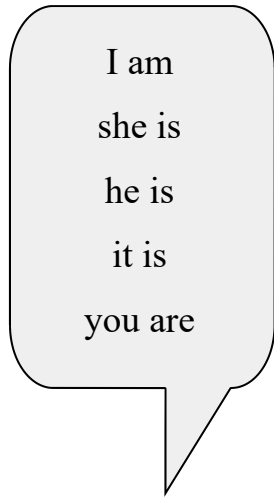


ls1eb.mp3

- 1.10a What is your name? (My name is _____.)
- 1.10b Where do you live? (I live in [city] _____.)
- 1.10c What is your address? (My address is _____.)
- 1.10d What is your phone number? (My phone number is [area code] _____.)
- 1.10e Where do you work? (I work at _____.)
- 1.10f What kind of work do you do? (I'm a[n] _____.)
- 1.10g What is your work phone number? (My work phone number is [area code] _____.)
- 1.10h What is your license number? (My license number is _____.)

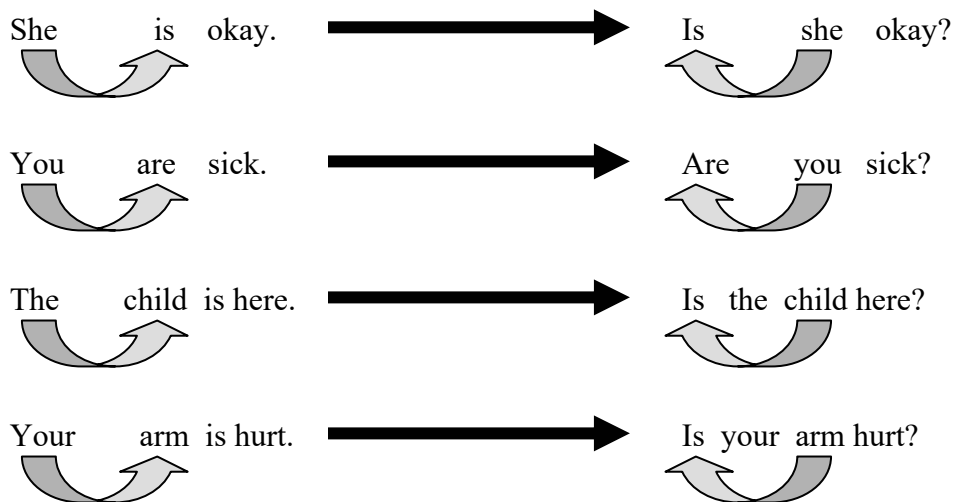
THE VERB "TO BE"

2.4a



THE ENGLISH QUESTION

3.3



USING "A" OR "AN"

a + a word beginning with	a =	an ambulance
	e =	an emergency
	i =	an identification card
	o =	an office
	u =	an unknown child

a + a word beginning with all other letters	=	a bus stop
	=	a car
	=	a father
	=	a man
	=	a wife
	=	a Phone

In the office:	an office	a large office
At the emergency:	an emergency	a medical emergency
With the ambulance:	an ambulance	a licensed ambulance
The card:	a card	an identification card
The number:	a number	an insurance number
The day at work:	a work day	an emergency work day

DAYS, MONTHS AND HOLIDAYS

Days of the week

Sunday (Sun.)

Monday (Mon.)

Tuesday (Tues.)

Wednesday (Wed.)

Thursday (Thurs.)

Friday (Fri.)

Saturday (Sat.)

Months of the year

January (Jan.)

February (Feb.)

March (Mar.)

April (Apr.)

May (May)

June (June)

July (July)

August (Aug.)

September (Sept.)

October (Oct.)

November (Nov.)

December (Dec.)

Holidays

New Year's Day (January 1)

Valentine's Day (February 14)

Easter (March or April)

Memorial Day (May)

Independence Day (July 4)

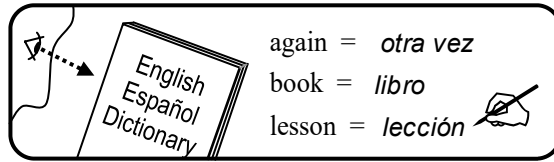
Labor Day (September)

Thanksgiving (November)

Hanukkah (December)

Christmas (December 25)

LESSON 1 VOCABULARY



Exercise 1.1 Vocabulary

a (an)

afternoon

are (to be)

do (to do)

each

English

evening (an)

example

excuse me

fine (good)

good

good afternoon

good evening

good morning

goodbye

have (to have)

hello (hi)

here

how

I

is (to be)

it

lesson

listen (to listen)

little, littler, littlest

live (to live)

long, longer, longest

morning

my

name

o'clock

okay (OK)

repeat (to repeat)

sentence

speak (to speak)

thank you (thanks)

time

two

what

year

yes

you, your

Exercise 1.2 and 1.3 Vocabulary

address (an)	kind
any, anything	may
arm (an)	not
but	of
call (to call)	personal identification
can	phone
child, children	reach (to reach)
city	see (to see)>
current, currently	sick (to be sick)
driver's license	store
from	thanks (thank you)
hi (hello)	the
hurt (to hurt)	this
I am , (to be) sick	where
ID	work (to work)
in	

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

a (an)	am (to be)	area code (an)
address (an)	ambulance (an)	arm (an)
after	and	at
afternoon	any, anything	bathroom
alphabet	are (to be)	bus

bus stop	fine (good)	I
but	fire	I am (I'm) (to be)
by	fire department	ID
call (to call)	for	identification
can	from	in
car	gas (gasoline)	insurance
card	gas station	is (to be)
cash	glad, gladly	it
check	good	kind
child, children	good afternoon	large
city	good evening	lesson
close, closer, closest,	good morning	letter
closely	goodbye	license
cost	groceries	license (number)
credit card	have (to have)	listen (to listen)
current, currently	health	little, littler, littlest
day	health card (number)	live (to live)
dictionary	hello (hi)	long, longer, longest
do (to do)	help (to help)	may
does (to do)	here	me
driver's license	hi (hello)	medical
each	holiday	month
emergency (an)	hospital	money
English	how	morning
evening (an)	how much	much
example	hurt (to hurt)	my
excuse me	husband	name

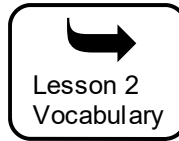
no, not	thanks (thank you)	to owe
number	the	to pay
o'clock	there	to question
of	this	to reach
office (an)	time	to repeat
okay (OK)	to	to say (saying)
open, openly	to answer	to see
out	to be (am, is, are,	to speak
personal identification	was, were)	to start
phone (number)	to be closed	to stop
(telephone)	to be glad	to take
please	to be hurt	to tell
police	to be open	to use
question	to be out of	to want
reach (to reach)	to be sick	to will
repeat (to repeat)	to begin	to work
right	to call	two
see (to see)	to cost	unknown
sentence	to do	vocabulary
should	to find	was (to be)
sick, sicker, sickest	to go	week
some, something	to have	were (to be)
speak (to speak)	to help	what
station	to know	when
stop (to stop)	to listen	where
store	to live	which
thank you (thanks)	to open	wife

will not (won't) (to
will)
with
word

work (to work)
year
yes
you, your

911 = The medical,
fire and police
emergency phone
number for any city
in the U.S.A

LESSON 2: EXERCISE LESSON



American
Media
ls2a.mp3

2.1 Lesson Text 1:1-5 (Acts).

Listen to the example.



British
Media
ls2ab.mp3

In my first book (In my first book) / I wrote about all the things (I wrote about all the things) / that Jesus did and taught (that Jesus did and taught) / In my first book I wrote about all the things that Jesus did and taught (In my first book I wrote about all the things that Jesus did and taught) / from the time he began his work (from the time he began his work) / until the day he was taken up to heaven. (until the day he was taken up to heaven.)



Repeat each sentence.

In my first book (In my first book) / I wrote about all the things (I wrote about all the things) / that Jesus did and taught (that Jesus did and taught) / In my first book I wrote about all the things that Jesus did and taught (In my first book I wrote about all the things that Jesus did and taught) / from the time he began his work (from the time he began his work) / until the day he was taken up to heaven. (until the day he was taken up to heaven.) from the time he began his work until the day he was taken up to heaven. (from the time he began his work until the day he was taken up to heaven.)

Before he was taken up, (Before he was taken up,) / he gave instructions (he gave instructions) / Before he was taken up, he gave instructions (Before he was taken up, he gave instructions) / by the power of the Holy Spirit (by the power of

the Holy Spirit) / to the men he had chosen as his apostles. (to the men he had chosen as his apostles.)

For forty days after his death (For forty days after his death) / he appeared to them many times (he appeared to them many times) / in ways that proved beyond doubt (in ways that proved beyond doubt) / that he was alive. (that he was alive.) / in ways that proved beyond doubt that he was alive. (in ways that proved beyond doubt that he was alive.) / They saw him, (They saw him,) / and he talked with them (and he talked with them) / about the Kingdom of God. (about the Kingdom of God.) / They saw him, and he talked with them about the Kingdom of God. (They saw him, and he talked with them about the Kingdom of God.)

And when they came together, (And when they came together,) / he gave them this order: (he gave them this order:) / And when they came together, he gave them this order: (And when they came together, he gave them this order:) / Do not leave Jerusalem, (Do not leave Jerusalem,) / but wait for the gift (but wait for the gift) / I told you about, (I told you about,) / the gift my Father promised. (the gift my Father promised.) / Do not leave Jerusalem, but wait for the gift I told you about, the gift my Father promised. (Do not leave Jerusalem, but wait for the gift I told you about, the gift my Father promised.)

John baptized with water, (John baptized with water,) / but in a few days (but in a few days) / you will be baptized (you will be baptized) / with the Holy Spirit. / John baptized with water, but in a few days you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit. (John baptized with water, but in a few days you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit.)

LESSON 2: EXERCISE LESSON**Listen to the example.**

TO TALK (to talk) / She promised to talk. (She promised to talk.)

Talk. (Talk.) / Please talk. (Please talk.)

talking (talking) / He is talking. (He is talking.)

talked (talked) / it is talked (it is talked) / it was talked (it was talked) / it will be talked (it will be talked)

- I talk (I talk) / he talks (he talks) / she talks (she talks) / it talks (it talks) / you talk (you talk) / we talk (we talk) / they talk (they talk)

2.2 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

2.2a TO TALK (to talk) / She promised to talk. (She promised to talk.)

Talk. (Talk.) / Please talk. (Please talk.)

talking (talking) / He is talking. (He is talking.)

talked (talked) / it is talked (it is talked) / it was talked (it was talked) / it will be talked (it will be talked)

- I talk (I talk) / he talks (he talks) / she talks (she talks) / it talks (it talks) / you talk (you talk) / we talk (we talk) / they talk (they talk)
- I talked (I talked) / he talked (he talked) / she talked (she talked) / it talked (it talked) / you talked (you talked) / we talked (we talked) / they talked (they talked)

- I will talk (I will talk) / he will talk (he will talk) / she will talk (she will talk) / it will talk (it will talk) / you will talk (you will talk) / we will talk (we will talk) / they will talk (they will talk)

2.2b TO PROMISE (to promise) / He wanted to promise. (He wanted to promise.)

Promise. (Promise.) / Please promise. (Please promise.)

promising (promising) / I am promising it. (I am promising it.)

promised (promised) / it is promised (it is promised) / it was promised (it was promised) / it will be promised (it will be promised)

- I promise (I promise) / he promises (he promises) / she promises (she promises) / it promises (it promises) / you promise (you promise) / we promise (we promise) / they promise (they promise)
- I promised (I promised) / he promised (he promised) / she promised (she promised) / it promised (it promised) / you promised (you promised) / we promised (we promised) / they promised (they promised)
- I will promise (I will promise) / he will promise (he will promise) / she will promise (she will promise) / it will promise (it will promise) / you will promise (you will promise) / we will promise (we will promise) / they will promise (they will promise)

2.2c TO CALL (to call) / He promised to call. (He promised to call.)

Call. (Call.) / Please call. (Please call.)

calling (calling) / It is calling. (It is calling.)

called (called) / it is called (it is called) / it was called (it was called) / it will be called (it will be called)



ls2c.mp3



ls2cb.mp3

- I call (I call) / he calls (he calls) / she calls (she calls) / it calls (it calls) / you call (you call) / we call (we call) / they call (they call)
- I called (I called) / he called (he called) / she called (she called) / it called (it called) / you called (you called) / we called (we called) / they called (they called)
- I will call (I will call) / he will call (he will call) / she will call (she will call) / it will call (it will call) / you will call (you will call) / we will call (we will call) / they will call (they will call)

2.2d TO PROVE (to prove) / She promised to prove it.

(She promised to prove it.)

Prove. (Prove.) / Please prove it. (Please prove it.)

proving (proving) / He is proving it. (He is proving it.)

proved (proved) / it is proved (it is proved) / it was proved

(it was proved) / it will be proved (it will be proved)

- I prove (I prove) / he proves (he proves) / she proves (she proves) / it proves (it proves) / you prove (you prove) / we prove (we prove) / they prove (they prove)
- I proved (I proved) / he proved (he proved) / she proved (she proved) / it proved (it proved) / you proved (you proved) / we proved (we proved) / they proved (they proved)
- I will prove (I will prove) / he will prove (he will prove) / she will prove (she will prove) / it will prove (it will prove) / you will prove (you will prove) / we will prove (we will prove) / they will prove (they will prove)

2.2e TO WAIT (to wait) / He promised to wait. (He promised to wait.)

Wait. (Wait.) / Please wait. (Please wait.)

waiting (waiting) / I am waiting for it. (I am waiting for it.)

waited (waited) / it is waited (it is waited) / it was waited

(it was waited) / it will be waited (it will be waited)

- I wait (I wait) / he waits (he waits) / she waits (she waits) / it waits (it waits) / you wait (you wait) / we wait (we wait) / they wait (they wait)
- I waited (I waited) / he waited (he waited) / she waited (she waited) / it waited (it waited) / you waited (you waited) / we waited (we waited) / they waited (they waited)
- I will wait (I will wait) / he will wait (he will wait) / she will wait (she will wait) / it will wait (it will wait) / you will wait (you will wait) / we will wait (we will wait) / they will wait (they will wait)

2.2f TO DOUBT (to doubt) / He promised not to doubt. (He promised not to doubt.)

Doubt. (Doubt.) / Please don't doubt. (Please don't doubt.)

doubting (doubting) / I am doubting it. (I am doubting it.)

doubted (doubted) / it is doubted (it is doubted) / it was doubted (it was

doubted) / it will be doubted (it will be doubted)

- I doubt (I doubt) / he doubts (he doubts) / she doubts (she doubts) / it doubts (it doubts) / you doubt (you doubt) / we doubt (we doubt) / they doubt (they doubt)
- I doubted (I doubted) / he doubted (he doubted) / she doubted (she doubted) / it doubted (it doubted) / you doubted (you doubted) / we doubted (we doubted) / they doubted (they doubted)

- I will doubt (I will doubt) / he will doubt (he will doubt) / she will doubt (she will doubt) / it will doubt (it will doubt) / you will doubt (you will doubt) / we will doubt (we will doubt) / they will doubt (they will doubt)

2.2g TO ORDER (to order) / He promised to order. (He promised to order.)

Order. (Order.) / Please order. (Please order.)

ordering (ordering) / I am ordering. (I am ordering.)

ordered (ordered) / it is ordered (it is ordered) / it was ordered (it was ordered) / it will be ordered (it will be ordered)

- I order (I order) / he orders (he orders) / she orders (she orders) / it orders (it orders) / you order (you order) / we order (we order) / they order (they order)
- I ordered (I ordered) / he ordered (he ordered) / she ordered (she ordered) / it ordered (it ordered) / you ordered (you ordered) / we ordered (we ordered) / they ordered (they ordered)
- I will order (I will order) / he will order (he will order) / she will order (she will order) / it will order (it will order) / you will order (you will order) / we will order (we will order) / they will order (they will order)



ls2e.mp3

2.3 Say each letter of the alphabet.



ls2eb.mp3

A / a	B / b	C / c	D / d	E / e	F / f	G / g
H / h	I / i	J / j	K / k	L / l	M / m	N / n
O / o	P / p	Q / q	R / r	S / s	T / t	U / u
V / v	W / w	X / x	Y / y	Z / z		

2.4 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).



2.4a **TO BE** (to be) / He promised to be good. (He promised to be good.)

Be. (Be.) / Please be good. (Please be good.)

being (being) / He is being good. (He is being good.)

~~been~~: *It is **been*** is infrequently or never used.

- I **am** (I **am**) / he **is** (he **is**) / she **is** (she **is**) / it **is** (it **is**) / you **are** (you **are**) / we **are** (we **are**) / they **are** (they **are**)
- I **was** (I **was**) / he **was** (he **was**) / she **was** (she **was**) / it **was** (it **was**) / you **were** (you **were**) / we **were** (we **were**) / they **were** (they **were**)
- I will be (I will be) / he will be (he will be) / she will be (she will be) / it will be (it will be) / you will be (you will be) / we will be (we will be) / they will be (they will be)

2.4b **TO DO** (to do) / She promised to do it. (She promised to do it.)

Do. (Do.) / Please do it. (Please do it.)

doing (doing) / She is doing it. (She is doing it.)

done (**done**) / it is **done** (it is **done**) / it was **done** (it was **done**) / it will be **done** (it will be **done**)

- I **do** (I **do**) / he **does** (he **does**) / she **does** (she **does**) / it **does** (it **does**) / you **do** (you **do**) / we **do** (we **do**) / they **do** (they **do**)
- I **did** (I **did**) / he **did** (he **did**) / she **did** (she **did**) / it **did** (it **did**) / you **did** (you **did**) / we **did** (we **did**) / they **did** (they **did**)

- I will do (I will do) / he will do (he will do) / she will do (she will do) / it will do (it will do) / you will do (you will do) / we will do (we will do) / they will do (they will do)



ls2f.mp3

2.4c **TO TEACH** (to teach) / He promised to teach. (He promised to teach.)

Teach. (Teach.) / Please teach. (Please teach.)

teaching (teaching) / He is teaching. (He is teaching.)

taught (taught) / it is **taught** (it is **taught**) / it was **taught** (it was **taught**) / it will be **taught** (it will be **taught**)



ls2fb.mp3

- I teach (I teach) / he teaches (he teaches) / she teaches (she teaches) / it teaches (it teaches) / you teach (you teach) / we teach (we teach) / they teach (they teach)
- I **taught** (I **taught**) / he **taught** (he **taught**) / she **taught** (she **taught**) / it **taught** (it **taught**) / you **taught** (you **taught**) / we **taught** (we **taught**) / they **taught** (they **taught**)
- I will teach (I will teach) / he will teach (he will teach) / she will teach (she will teach) / it will teach (it will teach) / you will teach (you will teach) / we will teach (we will teach) / they will teach (they will teach)

2.4d **TO GIVE** (to give) / He promised to give. (He promised to give.)

Give. (Give.) / Please give. (Please give.)

giving (giving) / He is giving. (He is giving.)

given (given) / it is **given** (it is **given**) / it was **given** (it was **given**) / it will be **given** (it will be **given**)

- I give (I give) / he gives (he gives) / she gives (she gives) / it gives (it gives) / you give (you give) / we give (we give) / they give (they give)
- I **gave** (I **gave**) / he **gave** (he **gave**) / she **gave** (she **gave**) / it **gave** (it **gave**) / you **gave** (you **gave**) / we **gave** (we **gave**) / they **gave** (they **gave**)
- I will give (I will give) / he will give (he will give) / she will give (she will give) / it will give (it will give) / you will give (you will give) / we will give (we will give) / they will give (they will give)

Listen to the Example.



American
Media

ls2g.mp3

British
Media

ls2gb.mp3

I wrote about all that John did. (I wrote about all that John did.)

I wrote about all that John did. (I wrote about all that John did.)

I am writing about all that John did. (I am writing about all that John did.)

I am writing about all that John did. (I am writing about all that John did.)

2.5 Repeat each sentence.



2.5a I wrote about all that John did. (I wrote about all that John did.)

I wrote about all that John did. (I wrote about all that John did.)

2.5b I am writing about all that John did. (I am writing about all that John did.)
I am writing about all that John did. (I am writing about all that John did.)

2.5c I will write about all that John did. (I will write about all that John did.)
I will write about all that John did. (I will write about all that John did.)

2.5d I wrote about all that John is doing. (I wrote about all that John is doing.)
I wrote about all that John is doing. (I wrote about all that John is doing.)

2.5e I am writing about all that John is doing. (I am writing about all that John is doing.)
I am writing about all that John is doing. (I am writing about all that John is doing.)

2.5f I will write about all that John is doing. (I will write about all that John is doing.)
I will write about all that John is doing. (I will write about all that John is doing.)

2.5g I wrote about all that John will do. (I wrote about all that John will do.)
I wrote about all that John will do. (I wrote about all that John will do.)

2.5h I am writing about all that John will do. (I am writing about all that John will do.)
I am writing about all that John will do. (I am writing about all that John will do.)

2.5i I will write about all that John will do. (I will write about all that John will do.)
I will write about all that John will do. (I will write about all that John will do.)



2.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).

2.6a **TO CHOOSE** (to choose) / He promised to choose. (He promised to choose.)

Choose. (Choose.) / Please choose. (Please choose.)

choosing (choosing) / She is choosing. (She is choosing.)

chosen (chosen) / it is **chosen** (it is **chosen**) / it was **chosen** (it was **chosen**) / it will be **chosen** (it will be **chosen**)

- I choose (I choose) / he chooses (he chooses) / she chooses (she chooses) / it chooses (it chooses) / you choose (you choose) / we choose (we choose) / they choose (they choose)
- I **chose** (I **chose**) / he **chose** (he **chose**) / she **chose** (she **chose**) / it **chose** (it **chose**) / you **chose** (you **chose**) / we **chose** (we **chose**) / they **chose** (they **chose**)
- I will choose (I will choose) / he will choose (he will choose) / she will choose (she will choose) / it will choose (it will choose) / you will choose (you will choose) / we will choose (we will choose) / they will choose (they will choose)

2.6b **TO SEE** (to see) / He promised to see it. (He promised to see it.)

See. (See.) / Please see it. (Please see it.)

seeing (seeing) / She is seeing. (She is seeing.)

seen (seen) / it is **seen** (it is **seen**) / it was **seen** (it was **seen**) / it will be **seen** (it will be **seen**)

- I see (I see) / he sees (he sees) / she sees (she sees) / it sees (it sees) / you see (you see) / we see (we see) / they see (they see)

- I **saw** (I **saw**) / he **saw** (he **saw**) / she **saw** (she **saw**) / it **saw** (it **saw**) / you **saw** (you **saw**) / we **saw** (we **saw**) / they **saw** (they **saw**)
- I will see (I will see) / he will see (he will see) / she will see (she will see) / it will see (it will see) / you will see (you will see) / we will see (we will see) / they will see (they will see)

2.6c **TO SPEAK** (to speak) / She promised to speak. (She promised to speak.)

Speak. (Speak.) / Please speak. (Please speak.)

speaking (speaking) / They are speaking. (They are speaking.)

spoken (**spoken**) / it is **spoken** (it is **spoken**) / it was **spoken** (it was **spoken**) / it will be **spoken** (it will be **spoken**)

- I speak (I speak) / he speaks (he speaks) / she speaks (she speaks) / it speaks (it speaks) / you speak (you speak) / we speak (we speak) / they speak (they speak)
- I **spoke** (I **spoke**) / he **spoke** (he **spoke**) / she **spoke** (she **spoke**) / it **spoke** (it **spoke**) / you **spoke** (you **spoke**) / we **spoke** (we **spoke**) / they **spoke** (they **spoke**)
- I will speak (I will speak) / he will speak (he will speak) / she will speak (she will speak) / it will speak (it will speak) / you will speak (you will speak) / we will speak (we will speak) / they will speak (they will speak)

Listen to the Example.



I wrote about all that John did. (I wrote about all that he did.)

I wrote about all that he did. (I wrote about all that he did.)

I am writing about all that John did. (I am writing about all that he did.)



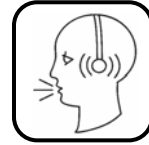
ls2i.mp3



ls2ib.mp3

I am writing about all that he did. (I am writing about all that he did.)
I will write about all that John did. (I will write about all that he did.)
I will write about all that he did. (I will write about all that he did.)

2.7 Substitute the word "he" for "John" in each sentence.



- 2.7a I wrote about all that John did. (I wrote about all that he did.)
I wrote about all that he did. (I wrote about all that he did.)
- 2.7b I am writing about all that John did. (I am writing about all that he did.)
I am writing about all that he did. (I am writing about all that he did.)
- 2.7c I will write about all that John did. (I will write about all that he did.)
I will write about all that he did. (I will write about all that he did.)
- 2.7d I wrote about all that John is doing. (I wrote about all that he is doing.)
I wrote about all that he is doing. (I wrote about all that he is doing.)
- 2.7e I am writing about all that John is doing. (I am writing about all that he is doing.)
I am writing about all that he is doing. (I am writing about all that he is doing.)
- 2.7f I will write about all that John is doing. (I will write about all that he is doing.)
I will write about all that he is doing. (I will write about all that he is doing.)
- 2.7g I wrote about all that John will do. (I wrote about all that he will do.)
I wrote about all that he will do. (I wrote about all that he will do.)

2.7h I am writing about all that John will do. (I am writing about all that he will do.)
I am writing about all that he will do. (I am writing about all that he will do.)

2.7i I will write about all that John will do. (I will write about all that he will do.)
I will write about all that he will do. (I will write about all that he will do.)

2.8 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).



American
Media

ls2j.mp3

British
Media

ls2jb.mp3

2.8a **TO COME** (to come) / He promised to come. (He promised to come.)
Come. (Come.) / Please come. (Please come.)

coming (coming) / We are coming. (We are coming.)

~~come~~: *It is **come*** is infrequently or never used.

- I come (I come) / he comes (he comes) / she comes (she comes) / it comes (it comes) / you come (you come) / we come (we come) / they come (they come)
- I **came** (I **came**) / he **came** (he **came**) / she **came** (she **came**) / it **came** (it **came**) / you **came** (you **came**) / we **came** (we **came**) / they **came** (they **came**)
- I will come (I will come) / he will come (he will come) / she will come (she will come) / it will come (it will come) / you will come (you will come) / we will come (we will come) / they will come (they will come)

2.8b **TO LEAVE** (to leave) / She promised to leave. (She promised to leave.)
Leave. (Leave.) / Please leave. (Please leave.)
leaving (leaving) / It is leaving. (It is leaving.)

left (left) / it is **left** (it is **left**) / it was **left** (it was **left**) / it will be **left** (it will be **left**)

- I leave (I leave) / he leaves (he leaves) / she leaves (she leaves) / it leaves (it leaves) / you leave (you leave) / we leave (we leave) / they leave (they leave)
- I **left** (I **left**) / he **left** (he **left**) / she **left** (she **left**) / it **left** (it **left**) / you **left** (you **left**) / we **left** (we **left**) / they **left** (they **left**)
- I will leave (I will leave) / he will leave (he will leave) / she will leave (she will leave) / it will leave (it will leave) / you will leave (you will leave) / we will leave (we will leave) / they will leave (they will leave)

2.8c **TO BEGIN** (To begin) / She promised to begin. (She promised to begin.)
Begin. (begin.) / Please begin. (Please begin.)

beginning (beginning) / We are beginning. (We are beginning.)

begun (begun) / it is **begun** (it is **begun**) / it was **begun** (it was **begun**)

- I begin (I begin) / he begins (he begins) / she begins (she begins) / it begins (it begins) / you begin (you begin) / we begin (we begin) / they begin (they begin)
- I **began** (I **began**) / he **began** (he **began**) / she **began** (she **began**) / it **began** (it **began**) / you **began** (you **began**) / we **began** (we **began**) / they **began** (they **began**)
- I will begin (I will begin) / he will begin (he will begin) / she will begin (she will begin) / it will begin (it will begin) / you will begin (you will begin) / we will begin (we will begin) / they will begin (they will begin)

2.8d **TO WRITE** (to write) / He promised to write. (He promised to write.)

Write. (Write.) / Please write in the book. (Please write in the book.)

writing (writing) / He is writing. (He is writing.)

written (written) / it is **written** (it is **written**) / it was **written** (it was **written**) / it will be **written** (it will be **written**)

- I write (I write) / he writes (he writes) / she writes (she writes) / it writes (it writes) / you write (you write) / we write (we write) / they write (they write)
- I **wrote** (I **wrote**) / he **wrote** (he **wrote**) / she **wrote** (she **wrote**) / it **wrote** (it **wrote**) / you **wrote** (you **wrote**) / we **wrote** (we **wrote**) / they **wrote** (they **wrote**)
- I will write (I will write) / he will write (he will write) / she will write (she will write) / it will write (it will write) / you will write (you will write) / we will write (we will write) / they will write (they will write)

2.8e **TO TELL** (to tell) / She promised to tell. (She promised to tell.)

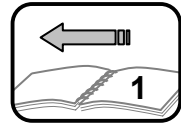
Tell. (Tell.) / Please tell. (Please tell.)

telling (telling) / I am telling. (I am telling.)

told (told) / it is **told** (it is **told**) / it was **told** (it was **told**) / it will be **told** (it will be **told**)

- I tell (I tell) / he tells (he tells) / she tells (she tells) / it tells (it tells) / you tell (you tell) / we tell (we tell) / they tell (they tell)
- I **told** (I **told**) / he **told** (he **told**) / she **told** (she **told**) / it **told** (it **told**) / you **told** (you **told**) / we **told** (we **told**) / they **told** (they **told**)

- I will tell (I will tell) / he will tell (he will tell) / she will tell (she will tell) / it will tell (it will tell) / you will tell (you will tell) / we will tell (we will tell) / they will tell (they will tell)



"To BE," "To DO," "To HAVE" AND "To GO"

PRESENT TENSE

To Be			
1 person		2 or more people	
I am	am I?	we are	are we?
you are	are you?	you are	are you?
he is	is he?	they are	are they?
she is	is she?		
it is	is it?		

2.4a

To Do			
1 person		2 or more people	
I do	do I?	we do	do we?
you do	do you?	you do	do you?
he does	does he?	they do	do they?
she does	does she?		
it does	does it?		

2.4b

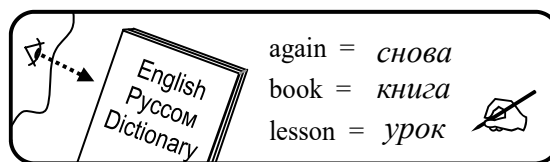
To Have			
1 person		2 or more people	
I have	have I?	we have	have we?
you have	have you?	you have	have you?
he has	has he?	they have	have they?
she has	has she?		
it has	has it?		

12.5d

To Go			
1 person		2 or more people	
I go	do I go?	we go	do we go?
you go	do you go?	you go	do you go?
he goes	does he go?	they go	do they go?
she goes	does she go?		
it goes	does it go?		

8.5b

LESSON 2 VOCABULARY



about	irregular verb	to be chosen
alive	man, men	to choose
all	many	to come
apostle (an)	more	to doubt
appearance (an)	news (good news)	to give
as	order (an)	to leave
before	person, people	to order
beginning	power, powerful,	to promise
beyond	powerfully	to prove
book	present	to substitute
day, daily	promise	to talk
death	proof	to teach
doubt	regular verb	to wait
exercise (an)	talk	to write
expression (an)	tense	together
father	text	until
few, fewer, fewest	that	up
first	them	verb
he	they	water
heaven	thing	way
his	to appear	writing
instruction	to be	

Expressions

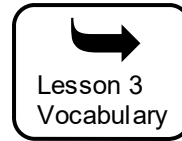
I wrote about the things that he taught **from** the time he began his work **until** the day he left. (1:1)

Before he left, **he gave** instructions to the men he had chosen. (1:2)

For forty days **after** it happened **he appeared** to them many times. (1:3)

When they came together, **he gave** them an order. (1:4)

LESSON 3: EXERCISE LESSON



ls3a.mp3

3.1 Lesson Text 1:6-11 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.



ls3ab.mp3

When the apostles met together with Jesus, (When the apostles met together with Jesus,) / they asked him, (they asked him,) / When the apostles met together with Jesus, they asked him, (When the apostles met together with Jesus, they asked him,) / When the apostles met together with Jesus, they asked him, (When the apostles met together with Jesus, they asked him,) / Lord, will you at this time (Lord, will you at this time) / give the Kingdom back to Israel? (give the Kingdom back to Israel?) / Lord, will you at this time give the Kingdom back to Israel? (Lord, will you at this time give the Kingdom back to Israel?) / Lord, will you at this time give the Kingdom back to Israel? (Lord, will you at this time give the Kingdom back to Israel?)

Jesus said to them, (Jesus said to them,) / The times and occasions are set (The times and occasions are set) / by my Father's own authority, (by my Father's own authority,) / and it is not for you to know when they will be. (and it is not for you to know when they will be.) / Jesus said to them, The times and occasions are set by my Father's own authority, and it is not for you to know when they will be. (Jesus said to them, The times and occasions are set by my Father's own authority, and it is not for you to know when they will be.) / Jesus said to them, The times and occasions are set by my Father's own authority, and it is not for you to know when they will be. (Jesus said to them, The times and occasions are set by my Father's own authority, and it is not for you to know when they will be.)

But when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, (But when the Holy Spirit comes upon you,) / you will be filled with power, (you will be filled with power,) / But when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, you will be filled with power, (But when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, you will be filled with power,) / But when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, you will be filled with power, (But when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, you will be filled with power,) / and you will be witnesses for me (and you will be witnesses for me) / to the ends of the earth. (to the ends of the earth.) / and you will be witnesses for me to the ends of the earth. (and you will be witnesses for me to the ends of the earth.) / and you will be witnesses for me to the ends of the earth. (and you will be witnesses for me to the ends of the earth.)

After saying this, (After saying this,) / he was taken up to heaven (he was taken up to heaven) / as they watched him, (as they watched him,) / and a cloud hid him from their sight. (and a cloud hid him from their sight.) / After saying this, he was taken up to heaven as they watched him, and a cloud hid him from their sight. (After saying this, he was taken up to heaven as they watched him, and a cloud hid him from their sight.) / After saying this, he was taken up to heaven as they watched him, and a cloud hid him from their sight. (After saying this, he was taken up to heaven as they watched him, and a cloud hid him from their sight.)

They still had their eyes fixed on the sky (They still had their eyes fixed on the sky) / as he went away (as he went away) / They still had their eyes fixed on the sky as he went away, (They still had their eyes fixed on the sky as he went away,) / when two men dressed in white (when two men dressed in white) / suddenly stood beside them and said, (suddenly stood beside them and said,) / Why are you standing there looking up at the sky? / (Why are you

standing there looking up at the sky?) / when two men dressed in white suddenly stood beside them and said, Why are you standing there looking up at the sky? (when two men dressed in white suddenly stood beside them and said, Why are you standing there looking up at the sky?) / when two men dressed in white suddenly stood beside them and said, Why are you standing there looking up at the sky? (when two men dressed in white suddenly stood beside them and said, Why are you standing there looking up at the sky?)

This Jesus, (This Jesus,) / who was taken from you into heaven, (who was taken from you into heaven,) / This Jesus, who was taken from you into heaven, (This Jesus, who was taken from you into heaven,) / will come back in the same way (will come back in the same way) / that you saw him go to heaven. (that you saw him go to heaven.) / will come back in the same way that you saw him go to heaven. (will come back in the same way that you saw him go to heaven.) / will come back in the same way that you saw him go to heaven. (will come back in the same way that you saw him go to heaven.)

LESSON 3: EXERCISE LESSON



ls3b.mp3



ls3bb.mp3

3.2 Repeat each sentence.

3.2a They were all together. (They were all together.)
They were all together. (They were all together.)

3.2b We were all together. (We were all together.)
We were all together. (We were all together.)

3.2c They will be all together. (They will be all together.)
They will be all together. (They will be all together.)

3.2d We are all together. (We are all together.)
We are all together. (We are all together.)

3.2e We're all together. (We're all together.)
We're all together. (We're all together.)

3.2f Are you going to give the money back? (Are you going to give the money back?)
Are you going to give the money back? (Are you going to give the money back?)

3.2g Are you going to talk? (Are you going to talk?)
Are you going to talk? (Are you going to talk?)

3.2h Are you going to help? (Are you going to help?)
Are you going to help? (Are you going to help?)

- 3.2i Are you going to call him? (Are you going to call him?)
Are you going to call him? (Are you going to call him?)
- 3.2j Are you going to leave? (Are you going to leave?)
Are you going to leave? (Are you going to leave?)
- 3.2k After he said this, he left. (After he said this, he left.)
After he said this, he left. (After he said this, he left.)
- 3.2l After she called, they saw it. (After she called, they saw it.)
After she called, they saw it. (After she called, they saw it.)
- 3.2m After we hid, we talked. (After we hid, we talked.)
After we hid, we talked. (After we hid, we talked.)
- 3.2n As he was talking, they were working. (As he was talking, they were working.)
As he was talking, they were working. (As he was talking, they were working.)
- 3.2o As we were speaking, we were walking. (As we were speaking, we were walking.)
As we were speaking, we were walking. (As we were speaking, we were walking.)
- 3.2p As he left, he called to us. (As he left, he called to us.)
As he left, he called to us. (As he left, he called to us.)

3.2q Why are you standing here looking at him? (Why are you standing here looking at him?)

Why are you standing here looking at him? (Why are you standing here looking at him?)



ls3c.mp3

3.3 Answer the question with either "yes" or "no."



ls3cb.mp3

3.3a Is she talking? Yes.

(Yes, she is talking.) Yes, she is talking. (Yes, she is talking.)

3.3b Was he standing? No.

(No, he was not standing.) No, he was not standing. (No, he was not standing.)

3.3c Was he standing? No, _____ wasn't _____ .

(No, he wasn't standing.) No, he wasn't standing. (No, he wasn't standing.)

3.3d Will he watch them leave? Yes.

(Yes, he will watch them leave.) Yes, he will watch them leave. (Yes, he will watch them leave.)

3.3e Will he watch them leave? Yes, he'll _____ .

(Yes, he'll watch them leave.) Yes, he'll watch them leave. (Yes, he'll watch them leave.)

- 3.3f Will the car start? No.
(No, the car will not start.) No, the car will not start. (No, the car will not start.)
- 3.3g Will the car start? No, _____ won't _____.
(No, the car won't start.) No, the car won't start. (No, the car won't start.)
- 3.3h Will we talk with them? Yes.
(Yes, we will talk with them.) Yes, we will talk with them. (Yes, we will talk with them.)
- 3.3i Will we talk with them? Yes, we'll _____.
(Yes, we'll talk with them.) Yes, we'll talk with them. (Yes, we'll talk with them.)
- 3.3j Are we glad to be here? Yes.
(Yes, we are glad to be here.) Yes, we are glad to be here. (Yes, we are glad to be here.)
- 3.3k Are we glad to be here? Yes, we're _____.
(Yes, we're glad to be here.) Yes, we're glad to be here. (Yes, we're glad to be here.)
- 3.3l Did he call the hospital? Yes.
(Yes, he called the hospital.) Yes, he called the hospital. (Yes, he called the hospital.)

3.3m Will she leave the groceries? No.

(No, she will not leave the groceries.) No, she will not leave the groceries. (No, she will not leave the groceries.)

3.3n Will she leave the groceries? No, _____ won't _____ .

(No, she won't leave the groceries.) No, she won't leave the groceries. (No, she won't leave the groceries.)

3.3o Will we call that phone number? Yes.

(Yes, we will call that phone number.) Yes, we will call that phone number. (Yes, we will call that phone number.)

3.3p Will we call that phone number? Yes, we'll _____ .

(Yes, we'll call that phone number.) Yes, we'll call that phone number. (Yes, we'll call that phone number.)

3.4 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

3.4a TO ASK (to ask) / She promised to ask. (She promised to ask.)

Ask. (Ask.) / Please ask. (Please ask.)

asking (asking) / He is asking. (He is asking.)

asked (asked) / it is asked (it is asked) / it was asked (it was asked) / it will be asked (it will be asked)

- I ask (I ask) / he asks (he asks) / she asks (she asks) / it asks (it asks) / you ask (you ask) / we ask (we ask) / they ask (they ask)

- I asked (I asked) / he asked (he asked) / she asked (she asked) / it asked (it asked) / you asked (you asked) / we asked (we asked) / they asked (they asked)
- I will ask (I will ask) / he will ask (he will ask) / she will ask (she will ask) / it will ask (it will ask) / you will ask (you will ask) / we will ask (we will ask) / they will ask (they will ask)

3.4b TO WATCH (to watch) / She promised to watch. (She promised to watch.)
Watch. (Watch.) / Please watch. (Please watch.)

watching (watching) / He is watching. (He is watching.)

watched (watched) / it is watched (it is watched) / it was watched (it was watched) / it will be watched (it will be watched)

- I watch (I watch) / he watches (he watches) / she watches (she watches) / it watches (it watches) / you watch (you watch) / we watch (we watch) / they watch (they watch)
- I watched (I watched) / he watched (he watched) / she watched (she watched) / it watched (it watched) / you watched (you watched) / we watched (we watched) / they watched (they watched)
- I will watch (I will watch) / he will watch (he will watch) / she will watch (she will watch) / it will watch (it will watch) / you will watch (you will watch) / we will watch (we will watch) / they will watch (they will watch)

3.4c TO OWN (to own) / She promised to own it. (She promised to own it.)

Own. (Own.) / Please own it. (Please own it.)

owning (owning) / He is owning it. (He is owning it.)



ls3d.mp3



ls3db.mp3

owned (owned) / it is owned (it is owned) / it was owned (it was owned) / it will be owned (it will be owned)

- I own (I own) / he owns (he owns) / she owns (she owns) / it owns (it owns) / you own (you own) / we own (we own) / they own (they own)
- I owned (I owned) / he owned (he owned) / she owned (she owned) / it owned (it owned) / you owned (you owned) / we owned (we owned) / they owned (they owned)
- I will own (I will own) / he will own (he will own) / she will own (she will own) / it will own (it will own) / you will own (you will own) / we will own (we will own) / they will own (they will own)

3.4d TO LOOK (to look) / She promised to look. (She promised to look.)

Look. (Look.) / Please look. (Please look.)

Looking (Looking) / He is looking. (He is looking.)

looked (looked) / it is looked (it is looked) / it was looked (it was looked) / it will be looked (it will be looked)

- I look (I look) / he looks (he looks) / she looks (she looks) / it looks (it looks) / you look (you look) / we look (we look) / they look (they look)
- I looked (I looked) / he looked (he looked) / she looked (she looked) / it looked (it looked) / you looked (you looked) / we looked (we looked) / they looked (they looked)
- I will look (I will look) / he will look (he will look) / she will look (she will look) / it will look (it will look) / you will look (you will look) / we will look (we will look) / they will look (they will look)

3.4e TO DRESS (to dress) / She promised to dress the children. (She promised to dress the children.)

Dress. (Dress.) / Please dress the children. (Please dress the children.)

dressing (dressing) / He is dressing them. (He is dressing them.)

dressed (dressed) / he is dressed (he is dressed) / she was dressed (she was dressed) / they will be dressed (they will be dressed)

- I dress (I dress) / he dresses (he dresses) / she dresses (she dresses) / it dresses (it dresses) / you dress (you dress) / we dress (we dress) / they dress (they dress)
- I dressed (I dressed) / he dressed (he dressed) / she dressed (she dressed) / it dressed (it dressed) / you dressed (you dressed) / we dressed (we dressed) / they dressed (they dressed)
- I will dress (I will dress) / he will dress (he will dress) / she will dress (she will dress) / it will dress (it will dress) / you will dress (you will dress) / we will dress (we will dress) / they will dress (they will dress)

3.4f TO FILL (to fill) / She promised to fill it.

(She promised to fill it.)

Fill. (Fill.) / Please fill it. (Please fill it.)

filling (filling) / He is filling it. (He is filling it.)

filled (filled) / it is filled (it is filled) / it was filled (it was filled) / it will be filled (it will be filled)

- I fill (I fill) / he fills (he fills) / she fills (she fills) / it fills (it fills) / you fill (you fill) / we fill (we fill) / they fill (they fill)
- I filled (I filled) / he filled (he filled) / she filled (she filled) / it filled (it filled) / you filled (you filled) / we filled (we filled) / they filled (they filled)

- I will fill (I will fill) / he will fill (he will fill) / she will fill (she will fill) / it will fill (it will fill) / you will fill (you will fill) / we will fill (we will fill) / they will fill (they will fill)

3.4g TO FIX (to fix) / She promised to fix it. (She promised to fix it.)

Fix. (Fix.) / Please fix it. (Please fix it.)

fixing (fixing) / He is fixing it. (He is fixing it.)

fixed (fixed) / it is fixed (it is fixed) / it was fixed (it was fixed) / it will be fixed (it will be fixed)

- I fix (I fix) / he fixes (he fixes) / she fixes (she fixes) / it fixes (it fixes) / you fix (you fix) / we fix (we fix) / they fix (they fix)
- I fixed (I fixed) / he fixed (he fixed) / she fixed (she fixed) / it fixed (it fixed) / you fixed (you fixed) / we fixed (we fixed) / they fixed (they fixed)
- I will fix (I will fix) / he will fix (he will fix) / she will fix (she will fix) / it will fix (it will fix) / you will fix (you will fix) / we will fix (we will fix) / they will fix (they will fix)

3.4h TO START (to start) / She promised to start it. (She promised to start it.)

Start. (Start.) / Please start it. (Please start it.)

starting (starting) / He is starting it. (He is starting it.)

started (started) / it is started (it is started) / it was started (it was started) / it will be started (it will be started)

- I start (I start) / he starts (he starts) / she starts (she starts) / it starts (it starts) / you start (you start) / we start (we start) / they start (they start)



ls3e.mp3



ls3eb.mp3

- I started (I started) / he started (he started) / she started (she started) / it started (it started) / you started (you started) / we started (we started) / they started (they started)
- I will start (I will start) / he will start (he will start) / she will start (she will start) / it will start (it will start) / you will start (you will start) / we will start (we will start) / they will start (they will start)

3.4i TO WITNESS (to witness) / She promised to witness it. (She promised to witness it.)

Witness. (Witness.) / Please witness it. (Please witness it.)

witnessing (witnessing) / He is witnessing it. (He is witnessing it.)

witnessed (witnessed) / it is witnessed (it is witnessed) / it was witnessed (it was witnessed) / it will be witnessed (it will be witnessed)

- I witness (I witness) / he witnesses (he witnesses) / she witnesses (she witnesses) / it witnesses (it witnesses) / you witness (you witness) / we witness (we witness) / they witness (they witness)
- I witnessed (I witnessed) / he witnessed (he witnessed) / she witnessed (she witnessed) / it witnessed (it witnessed) / you witnessed (you witnessed) / we witnessed (we witnessed) / they witnessed (they witnessed)
- I will witness (I will witness) / he will witness (he will witness) / she will witness (she will witness) / it will witness (it will witness) / you will witness (you will witness) / we will witness (we will witness) / they will witness (they will witness)

3.5 Say each letter of the alphabet.

A / a B / b C / c D / d E / e F / f G / g
H / h I / i J / j K / k L / l M / m N / n
O / o P / p Q / q R / r S / s T / t U / u
V / v W / w X / x Y / y Z / z

3.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs)



ls3f.mp3

3.6a TO BE (to be) / He promised to be good. (He promised to be good.)

Be. (Be.) / Please be good. (Please be good.)

being (being) / He is being good. (He is being good.)

~~been~~: *It is **been*** is infrequently or never used.

- I **am** (I **am**) / he **is** (he **is**) / she **is** (she **is**) / it **is** (it **is**) / you **are** (you **are**) / we **are** (we **are**) / they **are** (they **are**)
- I **was** (I **was**) / he **was** (he **was**) / she **was** (she **was**) / it **was** (it **was**) / you **were** (you **were**) / we **were** (we **were**) / they **were** (they **were**)
- I **will be** (I **will be**) / he **will be** (he **will be**) / she **will be** (she **will be**) / it **will be** (it **will be**) / you **will be** (you **will be**) / we **will be** (we **will be**) / they **will be** (they **will be**)

•

3.6b TO KNOW (to know) / She promised to know.

(She promised to know.)

Know. (Know.) / Please know. (Please know.)

knowing (knowing) / Knowing is believing. (Knowing is believing.)



ls3fb.mp3

known (known) / it is **known** (it is **known**) / it was **known** (it was **known**) / it will be **known** (it will be **known**)

- I know (I know) / he knows (he knows) / she knows (she knows) / it knows (it knows) / you know (you know) / we know (we know) / they know (they know)
- I **knew** (I **knew**) / he **knew** (he **knew**) / she **knew** (she **knew**) / it **knew** (it **knew**) / you **knew** (you **knew**) / we **knew** (we **knew**) / they **knew** (they **knew**)
- I will know (I will know) / he will know (he will know) / she will know (she will know) / it will know (it will know) / you will know (you will know) / we will know (we will know) / they will know (they will know)

3.6c **TO STAND** (to stand) / She promised to stand. (She promised to stand.)
Stand. (Stand.) / Please stand. (Please stand.)

standing (standing) / He is standing. (He is standing.)

~~stood~~: *It is **stood*** is infrequently or never used.

- I stand (I stand) / he stands (he stands) / she stands (she stands) / it stands (it stands) / you stand (you stand) / we stand (we stand) / they stand (they stand)
- I **stood** (I **stood**) / he **stood** (he **stood**) / she **stood** (she **stood**) / it **stood** (it **stood**) / you **stood** (you **stood**) / we **stood** (we **stood**) / they **stood** (they **stood**)
- I will stand (I will stand) / he will stand (he will stand) / she will stand (she will stand) / it will stand (it will stand) / you will stand (you will stand) / we will stand (we will stand) / they will stand (they will stand)

3.6d **TO SAY** (to say) / She promised to say. (She promised to say.)

Say. (Say.) / Please say. (Please say.)

saying (saying) / He is saying. (He is saying.)

said (said) / it is **said** (it is **said**) / it was **said** (it was **said**) / it will be **said** (it will be **said**)

- I say (I say) / he says (he says) / she says (she says) / it says (it says) / you say (you say) / we say (we say) / they say (they say)
- I **said** (I **said**) / he **said** (he **said**) / she **said** (she **said**) / it **said** (it **said**) / you **said** (you **said**) / we **said** (we **said**) / they **said** (they **said**)
- I will say (I will say) / he will say (he will say) / she will say (she will say) / it will say (it will say) / you will say (you will say) / we will say (we will say) / they will say (they will say)



ls3g.mp3

3.6e **TO MEET** (to meet) / She promised to meet him. (She promised to meet him.)

Meet. (Meet.) / Please meet. (Please meet.)

meeting (meeting) / She is meeting him. (She is meeting him.)

met (met) / it is **met** (it is **met**) / it was **met** (it was **met**) / it will be **met** (it will be **met**)

- I meet (I meet) / he meets (he meets) / she meets (she meets) / it meets (it meets) / you meet (you meet) / we meet (we meet) / they meet (they meet)
- I **met** (I **met**) / he **met** (he **met**) / she **met** (she **met**) / it **met** (it **met**) / you **met** (you **met**) / we **met** (we **met**) / they **met** (they **met**)
- I will meet (I will meet) / he will meet (he will meet) / she will meet (she will meet) / it will meet (it will meet) / you will meet (you will meet) / we will meet (we will meet) / they will meet (they will meet)



ls3gb.mp3

3.6f **TO HIDE** (to hide) / She promised to hide. (She promised to hide.)

Hide. (Hide.) / Please hide. (Please hide.)

hiding (hiding) / She is hiding. (She is hiding.)

hidden (hidden) / it is **hidden** (it is **hidden**) / it was **hidden** (it was **hidden**) / it will be **hidden** (it will be **hidden**)

- I hide (I hide) / he hides (he hides) / she hides (she hides) / it hides (it hides) / you hide (you hide) / we hide (we hide) / they hide (they hide)
- I **hid** (I **hid**) / he **hid** (he **hid**) / she **hid** (she **hid**) / it **hid** (it **hid**) / you **hid** (you **hid**) / we **hid** (we **hid**) / they **hid** (they **hid**)
- I will hide (I will hide) / he will hide (he will hide) / she will hide (she will hide) / it will hide (it will hide) / you will hide (you will hide) / we will hide (we will hide) / they will hide (they will hide)

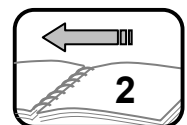
3.7 **I will say, "To stand there."** You will ask, "Why are you standing there?" I will say, "To look into the sky." You will ask, "Why are you looking into the sky?"

3.7a To stand there. (Why are you standing there?) Why are you standing there? (Why are you standing there?)

3.7b To look into the sky. (Why are you looking into the sky?) Why are you looking into the sky? (Why are you looking into the sky?)

3.7c To come to me. (Why are you coming to me?) Why are you coming to me? (Why are you coming to me?)

- 3.7d To watch the store. (Why are you watching the store?) Why are you watching the store? (Why are you watching the store?)
- 3.7e To talk to the police. (Why are you talking to the police?) Why are you talking to the police? (Why are you talking to the police?)
- 3.7f To help the men. (Why are you helping the men?) Why are you helping the men? (Why are you helping the men?)
- 3.7g To tell his father. (Why are you telling his father?) Why are you telling his father? (Why are you telling his father?)
- 3.7h To leave your car. (Why are you leaving your car?) Why are you leaving your car? (Why are you leaving your car?)
- 3.7i To say they worked. (Why are you saying they worked?) Why are you saying they worked? (Why are you saying they worked?)
- 3.7j To leave the water. (Why are you leaving the water?) Why are you leaving the water? (Why are you leaving the water?)



VERB TABLE

The verb "**To Be**" (irregular)

2.4a

<i>To ... form:</i> to be
Command form: Be
<i>...ing form:</i> being
X been: <i>It is been</i> is infrequently or never used.
Present: I am / he (she, it) is / you are / we are / they are
Past: I was / he (she, it) was / you were / we were / they were
Future: I will (shall) be / he (she, it) will (shall) be / you will (shall) be / we will (shall) be / they will (shall) be

The verb "**To look**" (regular)

3.4d

<i>To ... form:</i> to look
Command form: Look
<i>...ing form:</i> looking
looked: It is looked / It was looked / It will be looked /
Present: I look / he (she, it) looks / you look / we look / they look
Past: I looked / he (she, it) looked / you looked / we looked / they looked
Future: I will (shall) look / he (she, it) will (shall) look / you will (shall) look / we will (shall) look / they will (shall) look

The verb "**To watch**" (regular)

3.4b

<i>To watch ... form:</i> to watch
Command form: Watch
<i>...ing form:</i> watching
watched: It is watched / It was watched / It will be watched /
Present: I watch / he (she, it) watches / you watch / we watch / they watch
Past: I watched / he (she, it) watched / you watched / we watched / they watched
Future: I will (shall) watch / he (she, it) will (shall) watch / you will (shall) watch / we will (shall) watch / they will (shall) watch

"CAN" AND "MAY"

"May" asks permission:

- *May I see your driver's license?* = I am asking **permission** to see your driver's license.
- *May I see some personal identification?* = I am asking **permission** to see your personal identification.

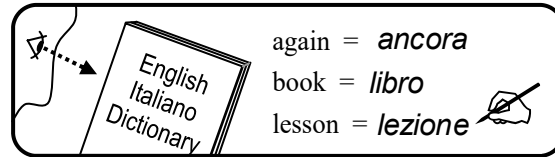
"Can" asks if someone is able:

- *Can you tell me where the store is?* = I am *asking* if you are able to tell me where the store is.
- *Can you tell me where to find groceries?* = I *am* asking if you are able to tell me where to find groceries.

Example:

Do you have a phone? May I call you? Can I reach you by phone?

LESSON 3 VOCABULARY



authority	sight	to fix
away	sky	to hide
back	someone	to look
beside	still	to meet
cloud	sudden, suddenly	to own
earth (an)	table	to stand
either	to ask	to watch
eye (an)	to be	to witness
filling	to be able	upon
form	to be filled	watch
him	to be fixed	white, whiter, whitest
into	to be set	who
meeting	to be taken	why
occasion (an)	to be taken away	witness
owner (an)	to be taken up	
permission	to dress	
same	to fill	

Expressions

Will you at this time **give it back** to us? (1:6)

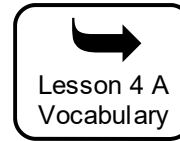
It is not for you to know when they will be. (1:7)

After saying this, **he was** taken away. (1:9)

They **still** had their eyes fixed on the sky **when** two men suddenly stood beside them. (1:10)

Why are you **standing** there **looking** up at the sky? (1:11)

LESSON 4-A: PRONUNCIATION LESSON



ls4a.mp3



ls4ab.mp3

4.1-A Lesson Text 2:1-13 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

When the day of Pentecost came, (When the day of Pentecost came,) / all the believers were gathered together in one place. / (all the believers were gathered together in one place.) / When the day of Pentecost came, all the believers were gathered together in one place. / (When the day of Pentecost came, all the believers were gathered together in one place.) / When the day of Pentecost came, all the believers were gathered together in one place. / (When the day of Pentecost came, all the believers were gathered together in one place.)

Suddenly there was a noise from the sky (Suddenly there was a noise from the sky) / which sounded like a strong wind blowing, (which sounded like a strong wind blowing,) / Suddenly there was a noise from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing, / (Suddenly there was a noise from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing,) / Suddenly there was a noise from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing, / (Suddenly there was a noise from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing,) / and it filled the whole house where they were sitting. / (and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.) / and it filled the whole house where they were sitting. / (and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.) / Suddenly there was a noise from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting. / (Suddenly there was a noise from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.) / Suddenly there was a noise from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting. / (Suddenly there was a noise

from the sky which sounded like a strong wind blowing, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting.)

Then they saw what looked like tongues of fire / (Then they saw what looked like tongues of fire) / which spread out and touched each person there. / (which spread out and touched each person there.) / Then they saw what looked like tongues of fire which spread out and touched each person there. / (Then they saw what looked like tongues of fire which spread out and touched each person there.) / Then they saw what looked like tongues of fire which spread out and touched each person there. / (Then they saw what looked like tongues of fire which spread out and touched each person there.)

They were all filled with the Holy Spirit (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit) / and began to talk in other languages, (and began to talk in other languages,) / They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages, / (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages,) / They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages, / (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages,) / as the Spirit enabled them to speak. / (as the Spirit enabled them to speak.) / as the Spirit enabled them to speak. / (as the Spirit enabled them to speak.) / They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages, as the Spirit enabled them to speak. / (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages, as the Spirit enabled them to speak.) / They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages, as the Spirit enabled them to speak. / (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to talk in other languages, as the Spirit enabled them to speak.)

There were Jews living in Jerusalem, (There were Jews living in Jerusalem,) / religious people (religious people) / who had come from every country in the world. / (who had come from every country in the world.) / There were Jews living in Jerusalem, religious people who had come from every country in the world. / (There were Jews living in Jerusalem, religious people who had come from every country in the world.) / There were Jews living in Jerusalem, religious people who had come from every country in the world. / (There were Jews living in Jerusalem, religious people who had come from every country in the world.) When they heard this noise, (When they heard this noise,) / a large crowd gathered. (a large crowd gathered.) / When they heard this noise, a large crowd gathered. / (When they heard this noise, a large crowd gathered.) / When they heard this noise, a large crowd gathered. / (When they heard this noise, a large crowd gathered.)

They were all excited, (They were all excited,) / because all of them heard the believers (because all of them heard the believers) / talking in their own languages. (talking in their own languages.) / They were all excited, because all of them heard the believers talking in their own languages. / (They were all excited, because all of them heard the believers talking in their own languages.) / They were all excited, because all of them heard the believers talking in their own languages. / (They were all excited, because all of them heard the believers talking in their own languages.)

In amazement and wonder they exclaimed, (In amazement and wonder they exclaimed,) / These people who are talking like this (These people who are talking like this) / are [from this country]! (are [from this country]!) / These people who are talking like this are [from this country]! / (These people who are

talking like this are [from this country]!) / These people who are talking like this are [from this country]! / (These people who are talking like this are [from this country]!) / In amazement and wonder they exclaimed, These people who are talking like this are [from this country]! / (In amazement and wonder they exclaimed, These people who are talking like this are [from this country]!) / In amazement and wonder they exclaimed, These people who are talking like this are [from this country]! / (In amazement and wonder they exclaimed, These people who are talking like this are [from this country]!)

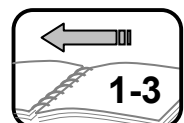
How is it, then, (How is it, then,) / that all of us hear them speaking (that all of us hear them speaking) / in our own native languages? (in our own native languages?) / How is it, then, that all of us hear them speaking in our own native languages? / (How is it, then, that all of us hear them speaking in our own native languages?) / How is it, then, that all of us hear them speaking in our own native languages? / (How is it, then, that all of us hear them speaking in our own native languages?)

We are [from many countries], (We are [from many countries],) / We are [from many countries], (We are [from many countries],) / yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages / (yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages) / yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages / (yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages) / We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages / (We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages) / We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages / (We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages) / about the great things that God has done! (about the great

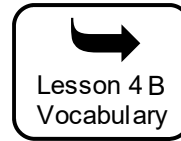
things that God has done!) / We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages about the great things that God has done! / (We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages about the great things that God has done!) / We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages about the great things that God has done! / (We are [from many countries], yet all of us hear them speaking in our own languages about the great things that God has done!)

Amazed and confused, (Amazed and confused,) / they kept asking each other, (they kept asking each other,) / What does this mean? (What does this mean?) / Amazed and confused, they kept asking each other, What does this mean? / (Amazed and confused, they kept asking each other, What does this mean?) / Amazed and confused, they kept asking each other, What does this mean? / (Amazed and confused, they kept asking each other, What does this mean?)

But others made fun of the believers, saying, (But others made fun of the believers, saying,) / These people are drunk! (These people are drunk!) / But others made fun of the believers, saying, These people are drunk! / (But others made fun of the believers, saying, These people are drunk!) / But others made fun of the believers, saying, These people are drunk! / (But others made fun of the believers, saying, These people are drunk!)



LESSON 4-B: PRONUNCIATION LESSON



4.1-B Read COMING TO THE UNITED STATES aloud for pronunciation practice.

COMING TO THE UNITED STATES

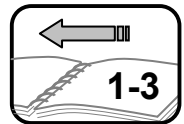
¹ Between 1850 and 1930, many people immigrated to the United States. Large groups came from non-English speaking countries such as Germany, Italy, Austria, Russia, Mexico, Sweden, Norway, Poland, China, and Japan. Most immigrants from these countries did not speak English when they arrived. Frequently, the adults learned only simple English. Their children learned English when they studied in American schools.

² During that period of time, there was a strong feeling among English-speaking Americans--and sometimes even among immigrant parents--that English was the only language that should be used. As a result, many immigrant children learned their parents' language when they were young, but stopped using it after they began attending American schools. They spoke only English unless they were talking to their parents or attending their parents' church. When these children became older, many could understand their parents' language but they could not speak it well. Equally, their parents could understand some English, but could not speak it fluently. This resulted in two languages being used in many homes. The parents used their own language when speaking to their children and the children responded in English.

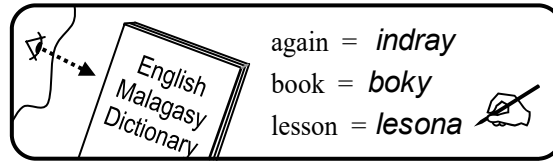
³ It was good that the immigrant children learned English well. It was not good, however, that the attitude at the time resulted in the loss of their ability to speak two languages fluently.

⁴ Now that you live in the United States, there will be many advantages for you if you learn to speak English well. It is our hope that **Spoken English Learned Quickly** will help you reach your goal of speaking fluent English. However, learning English must never reduce the value of your own language and cultural heritage. Always be proud of it. If you are a parent now-or when you have your own children-teach them your language and your culture.

⁵ Work hard to learn English well. But never forget your first language. Be proud of your language and cultural heritage.



LESSON 4-A VOCABULARY



aloud	one	to like
already	other, others	to make (fun of)
also	own	to mean
because	place	to pronounce
believer	practice	to practice
confusion	pronunciation	to read
country	religious, religiously	to record
crowd	review	to review
different	strength	to sit
drink	strong, stronger,	to sound
end	strongest, strongly	to spread
every, everything	then	to spread out
excitement	three	to study
exclamation	to be	to touch
extra	to be amazed	to wonder
gathering	to be confused	tongue
great, greater, greatest,	to be drunk	whole
greatly	to be excited	wind
house	to be strong	world
language	to blow	yet
large, larger, largest,	to enable	
largely	to exclaim	
meaning	to gather	
native s	to hear	
noise	to keep	

Expressions

When they heard this noise, a large crowd gathered. (2:6)

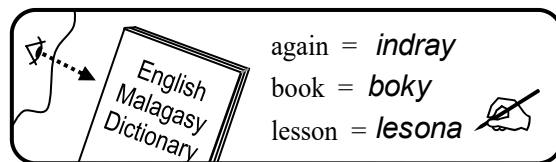
Then they saw **what looked like** fire. (2:3)

They were all excited, **because** all of them heard their own language. (2:6)

How is it, then, **that** all of us hear them speaking in our own languages? (2:8)

They kept **asking each other**, "What does this mean?" (2:12)

LESSON 4-B VOCABULARY



ability	fluent, fluently	must
adult	frequent, frequently	never
advantage (an)	Germany	non-English
always	goal	Norway
American	group	now
among	hard, harder, hardest	old, older, oldest
attitude (an)	heritage	only
Austria	home	parent
between	hope	period
China	however	Poland
church	if	proud, proudly
could	Italy	response
cultural, culturally	Japan	result
equal, equally	Mexico	Russia
feeling	most, mostly	school

simple, simpler,	to hope	unless
simplest, simply	to immigrate	value
such	to learn	well
Sweden	to loose	young, younger,
their	to reduce	youngest
to arrive	to respond	
to attend	to result	
to become	to study	
to feel	to understand	
to forget	United States	

Expressions

Between 1850 **and** 1930, many people immigrated to the United States. (§1)

Frequently, the adults learned only simple English. (§1)

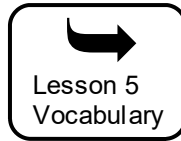
During that period of time, there was a strong feeling that English was the only language that should be used. (§2)

As a result, many children stopped using their parents' language. (§2)

They spoke only English **unless** they were talking to their parents. (§2)

However, learning English must never reduce the value of your own language and cultural heritage. (§4)

LESSON 5: REVIEW LESSON



ls5a.mp3



ls5ab.mp3

5.1 Repeat each sentence.

5.1a Complete the following sentences with "amazed." I will say, "I am," and you will answer, "I am amazed."

I am (I **am** amazed.) / **He is** (He **is** amazed.) / **You are** (You **are** amazed.) /
We are (We **are** amazed.) / **They are** (They **are** amazed.)

— Complete the following sentences with "confused."

I was (I **was** confused.) / **She was** (She **was** confused.) / **You were** (You **were** confused.) / **We were** (We **were** confused.) / **They were** (They **were** confused.)

— Complete the following sentences with "strong."

I will be (I **will be** strong.) / **He will be** (He **will be** strong.) / **You will be** (You **will be** strong.) / **We will be** (We **will be** strong.) / **They will be** (They **will be** strong.)

5.1b Complete the following sentences with "going to work."

I am (I **am** going to work.) / **He is** (He **is** going to work.) / **You are** (You **are** going to work.) / **We are** (We **are** going to work.) / **They are** (They **are** going to work.)

— Complete the following sentences with "coming to help."

I **was** (I **was** coming to help.) / She **was** (She **was** coming to help.) / You
were (You **were** coming to help.) / We **were** (We **were** coming to help.) /
They **were** (They **were** coming to help.)

— Complete the following sentences with "coming to ask."

I will be (I will be coming to ask.) / He will be (He will be coming to ask.) /
You will be (You will be coming to ask.) / We will be (We will be coming
to ask.) / They will be (They will be coming to ask.)

5.1c Complete the following sentences with "out of gas."

I **am** (I **am** out of gas.) / He **is** (He **is** out of gas.) / You **are** (You **are** out of
gas.) / We **are** (We **are** out of gas.) / They **are** (They **are** out of gas.)

— Complete the following sentences with "out of groceries."

I **was** (I **was** out of groceries.) / She **was** (She **was** out of groceries.) / You
were (You **were** out of groceries.) / We **were** (We **were** out of groceries.) /
They **were** (They **were** out of groceries.)

— Complete the following sentences with "out of money."

I will be (I will be out of money.) / He will be (He will be out of money.) /
You will be (You will be out of money.) / We will be (We will be out of
money.) / They will be (They will be out of money.)

5.1d Complete the following sentences with "with my husband."

I leave (I leave with my husband.) / He leaves (He leaves with my husband.)
/ You leave (You leave with my husband.) / We leave (We leave with my
husband.) / They leave (They leave with my husband.)

— Complete the following sentences with "with my wife."

I **left** (I **left** with my wife.) / She **left** (She **left** with my wife.) / You **left**
(You **left** with my wife.) / We **left** (We **left** with my wife.) / They **left** (They
left with my wife.)

— Complete the following sentences with "with one child."

I will leave (I will leave with one child.) / She will leave (She will leave with
one child.) / You will leave (You will leave with one child.) / We will leave
(We will leave with one child.) / They will leave (They will leave with one
child.)

5.1e Complete the following sentences with "from the book."

I teach (I teach from the book.) / He teaches (He teaches from the book.) / You teach (You teach from the book.) / We teach (We teach from the book.) / They teach (They teach from the book.)

— Complete the following sentences with "about the hospital."

I **taught** (I **taught** about the hospital.) / She **taught** (She **taught** about the hospital.) / You **taught** (You **taught** about the hospital.) / We **taught** (We **taught** about the hospital.) / They **taught** (They **taught** about the hospital.)

— Complete the following sentences with "every day."

I will teach (I will teach every day.) / She will teach (She will teach every day.) / You will teach (You will teach every day.) / We will teach (We will teach every day.) / They will teach (They will teach every day.)

5.1f Complete the following sentences with "like I (or another person) am hurt." I will say, "I sound." You will answer, "I sound like I am hurt." I will say, "He sounds." You will answer, "He sounds like he is hurt."

I sound (I sound like I am hurt.) / He sounds (He sounds like he is hurt.) / You sound (You sound like you are hurt.) / We sound (We sound like we are hurt.) / They sound (They sound like they are hurt.)

— Complete the following sentences with, "like I (or another person) was sick."

I sounded (I sounded like I was sick.) / She sounded (She sounded like she was sick.) / You sounded (You sounded like you were sick.) / We sounded (We sounded like we were sick.) / They sounded (They sounded like they were sick.)

— Complete the following sentences with, "like I (or another person) am strong."

I will sound (I will sound like I am strong.) / She will sound (She will sound like she is strong.) / You will sound (You will sound like you are strong.) / We will sound (We will sound like we are strong.) / They will sound (They will sound like they are strong.)

5.1g Complete the following sentences with "to ask them."

I frequently forget (I frequently forget to ask them.) / She frequently forgets (She frequently forgets to ask them.) / You frequently forget (You frequently forget to ask them.) / We frequently forget (We frequently forget to ask them.) / They frequently forget (They frequently forget to ask them.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to wait for the bus."

I **forgot** (I **forgot** to wait for the bus.) / She **forgot** (She **forgot** to wait for the bus.) / You **forgot** (You **forgot** to wait for the bus.) / We **forgot** (We **forgot** to wait for the bus.) / They **forgot** (They **forgot** to wait for the bus.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to help that older man."

I will not forget (I will not forget to help that older man.) / She will not forget (She will not forget to help that older man.) / You will not forget (You will not forget to help that older man.) / We will not forget (We will not forget to help that older man.) / They will not forget (They will not forget to help that older man.)



ls5c.mp3

5.1h Complete the following sentences with "them here every evening."



ls5cb.mp3

I always meet (I always meet them here every evening.) / He always meets (He always meets them here every evening.) / You always meet (You always meet them here every evening.) / We always meet (We always meet them here every evening.) / They always meet (They always meet them here every evening.)

— Complete the following sentences with "them here after work."

I always **met** (I always **met** them here after work.) / She always **met** (She always **met** them here after work.) / You always **met** (You always **met** them here after work.) / We always **met** (We always **met** them here after work.) / They always **met** (They always **met** them here after work.)

— Complete the following sentences with "them all before evening."

I will meet (I will meet them all before evening.) / She will meet (She will meet them all before evening.) / You will meet (You will meet them all

before evening.) / We will meet (We will meet them all before evening.) /
They will meet (They will meet them all before evening.)

5.1i Complete the following sentences with "first."

I never speak (I never speak first.) / He never speaks (He never speaks first.)
/ You never speak (You never speak first.) / We never speak (We never
speak first.) / They never speak (They never speak first.)

— Complete the following sentences with "longer than we wanted."

I **spoke** (I **spoke** longer than we wanted.) / She **spoke** (She **spoke** longer
than we wanted.) / You **spoke** (You **spoke** longer than we wanted.) / We
spoke (We **spoke** longer than we wanted.) / They **spoke** (They **spoke** longer
than we wanted.)

— Complete the following sentences with "unless we must leave."

I will speak (I will speak unless we must leave.) / She will speak (She will
speak unless we must leave.) / You will speak (You will speak unless we
must leave.) / We will speak (We will speak unless we must leave.) / They
will speak (They will speak unless we must leave.)

5.2 Repeat each sentence after saying, "I told you I want _____. " I will say "to lift it." You will answer, "I told you I want to lift it."

5.2a to lift it

(I told you I want to lift it.) I told you I want to lift it. (I told you I want to lift it.)

5.2b to hide it

(I told you I want to hide it.) I told you I want to hide it. (I told you I want to hide it.)

5.2c to choose a place

(I told you I want to choose a place.) I told you I want to choose a place.
(I told you I want to choose a place.)

5.2d to tell my father

(I told you I want to tell my father.) I told you I want to tell my father. (I told you I want to tell my father.)

5.2e to see the bus stop

(I told you I want to see the bus stop.) I told you I want to see the bus stop. (I told you I want to see the bus stop.)

5.2f to find a bathroom

(I told you I want to find a bathroom.) I told you I want to find a bathroom.
(I told you I want to find a bathroom.)

5.2g to receive some money

(I told you I want to receive some money.) I told you I want to receive some money. (I told you I want to receive some money.)

5.2h to call before I leave

(I told you I want to call before I leave.) I told you I want to call before I leave. (I told you I want to call before I leave.)

5.2i to show my personal identification

(I told you I want to show my personal identification.) I told you I want to show my personal identification. (I told you I want to show my personal identification.)

5.2j to prove how much insurance I have

(I told you I want to prove how much insurance I have.) I told you I want to prove how much insurance I have. (I told you I want to prove how much insurance I have.)

5.2k to say something for each of us

(I told you I want to say something for each of us.) I told you I want to say something for each of us. (I told you I want to say something for each of us.)

- 5.3 **I will say, "to do my work."** You will answer, "I am doing my work."
I will say, "to stand beside his wife." You will answer, "He is standing
beside his wife."

5.3a to do my work

(I am doing my work.) I am doing my work. (I am doing my work.)

5.3b to stand beside his wife

(He is standing beside his wife.) He is standing beside his wife. (He is
standing beside his wife.)

5.3c to give his phone number

(He is giving his phone number.) He is giving his phone number. (He is
giving his phone number.)

5.3d to watch her children

(She is watching her children.) She is watching her children. (She is
watching her children.)

5.3e to find our address

(We are finding our address.) We are finding our address. (We are finding
our address.)

5.3f to look at your car

(You are looking at your car.) You are looking at your car. (You are looking
at your car.)

5.3g to live with his child

(He is living with his child.) He is living with his child. (He is living with his child.)

5.3h to ask for her health card number

(She is asking for her health card number.) She is asking for her health card number. (She is asking for her health card number.)

5.4 Repeat each letter of the alphabet.

A / a	B / b	C / c	D / d	E / e	F / f	G / g
H / h	I / i	J / j	K / k	L / l	M / m	N / n
O / o	P / p	Q / q	R / r	S / s	T / t	U / u
V / v	W / w	X / x	Y / y	Z / z		

5.5 Answer the following questions with "Yes."

5.5a Do you like this city?

(Yes, I like this city.) Yes, I like this city. (Yes, I like this city.)

5.5b Does he like this city?

(Yes, he likes this city.) Yes, he likes this city. (Yes, he likes this city.)

5.5c Do we like this city?

(Yes, we like this city.) Yes, we like this city. (Yes, we like this city.)

5.5d Do they like this city?

(Yes, they like this city.) Yes, they like this city. (Yes, they like this city.)

5.5e Did you have a phone?

(Yes, I had a phone.) Yes, I had a phone. (Yes, I had a phone.)

5.5f Did she have a phone?

(Yes, she had a phone.) Yes, she had a phone. (Yes, she had a phone.)

5.5g Did we have a phone?

(Yes, we had a phone.) Yes, we had a phone. (Yes, we had a phone.)

5.5h Did they have a phone?

(Yes, they had a phone.) Yes, they had a phone. (Yes, they had a phone.)

5.5i Will you owe money?

(Yes, I will owe money.) Yes, I will owe money. (Yes, I will owe money.)

5.5j Will he owe money?

(Yes, he will owe money.) Yes, he will owe money. (Yes, he will owe money.)

5.5k Will we owe money?

(Yes, we will owe money.) Yes, we will owe money. (Yes, we will owe money.)

5.51 Will they owe money?

(Yes, they will owe money.) Yes, they will owe money. (Yes, they will owe money.)



ls5e.mp3

5.6 Repeat each number.



ls5eb.mp3

0 [zero]	1 [one]	2 [two]
3 [three]	4 [four]	5 [five]
6 [six]	7 [seven]	8 [eight]
9 [nine]	10 [ten]	11 [eleven]
12 [twelve]	13 [thirteen]	14 [fourteen]
15 [fifteen]	16 [sixteen]	17 [seventeen]
18 [eighteen]	19 [nineteen]	20 [twenty]
30 [thirty]	40 [forty]	50 [fifty]
60 [sixty]	70 [seventy]	80 [eighty]
90 [ninety]	100 [one hundred]	1,000 [one thousand]

5.7 Ask the question that the statement answers. I will say, "Yes, I like this car." You will answer, "Do you like this car?"

5.7a Yes, I like this car.

(Do you like this car?) Do you like this car? (Do you like this car?)

5.7b Yes, he likes this car.

(Does he like this car?) Does he like this car? (Does he like this car?)

5.7c Yes, we like this car.

(Do we like this car?) Do we like this car? (Do we like this car?)

5.7d Yes, they like this car.

(Do they like this car?) Do they like this car? (Do they like this car?)

5.7e Yes, I gave him the work phone number.

(Did you give him the work phone number?) Did you give him the work phone number? (Did you give him the work phone number?)

5.7f Yes, she gave him the work phone number.

(Did she give him the work phone number?) Did she give him the work phone number? (Did she give him the work phone number?)

5.7g Yes, we gave him the work phone number.

(Did we give him the work phone number?) Did we give him the work phone number? (Did we give him the work phone number?)

5.7h Yes, they gave him the work phone number.

(Did they give him the work phone number?) Did they give him the work phone number? (Did they give him the work phone number?)

5.7i Yes, I will fill the car with gas.

(Will you fill the car with gas?) Will you fill the car with gas? (Will you fill the car with gas?)

5.7j Yes, he will fill the car with gas.

(Will he fill the car with gas?) Will he fill the car with gas? (Will he fill the car with gas?)

5.7k Yes, we will fill the car with gas.

(Will we fill the car with gas?) Will we fill the car with gas? (Will we fill the car with gas?)

5.7l Yes, they will fill the car with gas.

(Will they fill the car with gas?) Will they fill the car with gas? (Will they fill the car with gas?)

5.8 **Repeat the sentence using the time I tell you.** I will say, "I told you what he said. Today _____." You will answer, "Today I am telling you what he said."

5.8a I told you what he said. Today _____.

(Today I am telling you what he said.) Today I am telling you what he said.

(Today I am telling you what he said.)

5.8b I told you what he said. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow I will tell you what he said.) Tomorrow I will tell you what he said. (Tomorrow I will tell you what he said.)

- 5.8c I know where the house is. Yesterday _____.
(Yesterday I knew where the house was.) Yesterday I knew where the house was. (Yesterday I knew where the house was.)
- 5.8d We owe him money. Tomorrow _____.
(Tomorrow we will owe him money.) Tomorrow we will owe him money.
(Tomorrow we will owe him money.)
- 5.8e You will look at the sky. Yesterday _____.
(Yesterday you looked at the sky.) Yesterday you looked at the sky.
(Yesterday you looked at the sky.)
- 5.8f We start to talk together at the beginning. Tomorrow _____.
(Tomorrow we will start to talk together at the beginning.) Tomorrow we will start to talk together at the beginning. (Tomorrow we will start to talk together at the beginning.)
- 5.8g The gas station office was open. Today _____.
(Today the gas station office is open.) Today the gas station office is open.
(Today the gas station office is open.)
- 5.8h They made fun of the man. Tomorrow _____.
(Tomorrow they will make fun of the man.) Tomorrow they will make fun of the man. (Tomorrow they will make fun of the man.)

5.8i The wind blows and makes a noise. Yesterday _____.
(Yesterday the wind blew and made a noise.) Yesterday the wind blew and made a noise. (Yesterday the wind blew and made a noise.)

5.8j We were together after asking about the address. Tomorrow _____.
(Tomorrow we will be together after asking about the address.) Tomorrow we will be together after asking about the address. (Tomorrow we will be together after asking about the address.)

5.9 **I will ask, "Who is he talking to?"** Then I will say, "Me?" You will answer, "He is talking to me."



ls5f.mp3



ls5fb.mp3

5.9a Who is he talking to? Me?
(He is talking to me.) He is talking to me. (He is talking to me.)

5.9b Who is he talking to? Him?
(He is talking to him.) He is talking to him. (He is talking to him.)

5.9c Who is he talking to? Her?
(He is talking to her.) He is talking to her. (He is talking to her.)

5.9d Who is he talking to? It?
(He is talking to it.) He is talking to it. (He is talking to it.)

5.9e Who are they talking to? You?
(They are talking to you.) They are talking to you. (They are talking to you.)

5.9f Who are they talking to? Us?

(They are talking to us.) They are talking to us. (They are talking to us.)

5.9g Who are they talking to? Them?

(They are talking to them.) They are talking to them. (They are talking to them.)

5.10 **I will say, "Whose credit card is this? Do you own it?"** You will answer,
"Yes, it's mine."

5.10a Whose credit card is this? Do you own it?

(Yes, it's mine.) Yes, it's mine. (Yes, it's mine.)

5.10b Whose credit card is this? Does he own it?

(Yes, it's his.) Yes, it's his. (Yes, it's his.)

5.10c Whose credit card is this? Does she own it?

(Yes, it's hers.) Yes, it's hers. (Yes, it's hers.)

5.10d Whose credit card is this? Do I own it?

(Yes, it's yours.) Yes, it's yours. (Yes, it's yours.)

5.10e Whose credit card is this? Do we own it?

(Yes, it's ours.) Yes, it's ours. (Yes, it's ours.)

5.10f Whose credit card is this? Do they own it?

(Yes, it's theirs.) Yes, it's theirs. (Yes, it's theirs.)

5.11 **I will say, "Is this your book?"** You will answer, "Yes, it's my book. I'm telling you, it's mine."

5.11a Is this your book?

(Yes, it's my book. I'm telling you, it's mine.) Yes, it's my book. I'm telling you, it's mine. (Yes, it's my book. I'm telling you, it's mine.)

5.11b Is this his book?

(Yes, it's his book. I'm telling you, it's his.) Yes, it's his book. I'm telling you, it's his. (Yes, it's his book. I'm telling you, it's his.)

5.11c Is this her book?

(Yes, it's her book. I'm telling you, it's hers.) Yes, it's her book. I'm telling you, it's hers. (Yes, it's her book. I'm telling you, it's hers.)

5.11d Is this your book?

(Yes, it's your book. I'm telling you, it's yours.) Yes, it's your book. I'm telling you, it's yours. (Yes, it's book. I'm telling you, it's yours.)

5.11e Is this our book?

(Yes, it's our book. I'm telling you, it's ours.) Yes, it's our book. I'm telling you, it's ours. (Yes, it's our book. I'm telling you, it's ours.)

5.11f Is this their book?

(Yes, it's their book. I'm telling you, it's theirs.) Yes, it's their book. I'm telling you, it's theirs. (Yes, it's their book. I'm telling you, it's theirs.)

5.12 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).



ls5g.mp3

5.12a **TO KNOW** (to know) / She promised to know. (She promised to know.)



ls5gb.mp3

Know. (Know.) / Please know. (Please know.)

knowing (knowing) / Knowing is believing. (Knowing is believing.)

known (known) / it is known (it is known) / it was known (it was known) / it will be known (it will be known)

- I know (I know) / he knows (he knows) / she knows (she knows) / it knows (it knows) / you know (you know) / we know (we know) / they know (they know)
- I **knew** (I **knew**) / he **knew** (he **knew**) / she **knew** (she **knew**) / it **knew** (it **knew**) / you **knew** (you **knew**) / we **knew** (we **knew**) / they **knew** (they **knew**)
- I will know (I will know) / he will know (he will know) / she will know (she will know) / it will know (it will know) / you will know (you will know) / we will know (we will know) / they will know (they will know)

5.12b **TO STAND** (to stand) / She promised to stand. (She promised to stand.)

Stand. (Stand.) / Please stand. (Please stand.)

standing (standing) / He is standing. (He is standing.)

~~stood~~: *It is **stood*** is infrequently or never used.

- I stand (I stand) / he stands (he stands) / she stands (she stands) / it stands (it stands) / you stand (you stand) / we stand (we stand) / they stand (they stand)
- I **stood** (I **stood**) / he **stood** (he **stood**) / she **stood** (she **stood**) / it **stood** (it **stood**) / you **stood** (you **stood**) / we **stood** (we **stood**) / they **stood** (they **stood**)
- I will stand (I will stand) / he will stand (he will stand) / she will stand (she will stand) / it will stand (it will stand) / you will stand (you will stand) / we will stand (we will stand) / they will stand (they will stand)

5.12c **TO SAY** (to say) / She promised to say. (She promised to say.)

Say. (Say.) / Please say. (Please say.)

saying (saying) / He is saying. (He is saying.)

said (**said**) / it is **said** (it is **said**) / it was **said** (it was **said**) / it will be **said** (it will be **said**)

- I say (I say) / he says (he says) / she says (she says) / it says (it says) / you say (you say) / we say (we say) / they say (they say)
- I **said** (I **said**) / he **said** (he **said**) / she **said** (she **said**) / it **said** (it **said**) / you **said** (you **said**) / we **said** (we **said**) / they **said** (they **said**)
- I will say (I will say) / he will say (he will say) / she will say (she will say) / it will say (it will say) / you will say (you will say) / we will say (we will say) / they will say (they will say)

5.12d **TO HIDE** (to hide) / She promised to hide. (She promised to hide.)

Hide. (Hide.) / Please hide. (Please hide.)

hiding (hiding) / She is hiding. (She is hiding.)

hidden (**hidden**) / it is **hidden** (it is **hidden**) / it was **hidden** (it was **hidden**) / it will be **hidden** (it will be **hidden**)

- I hide (I hide) / he hides (he hides) / she hides (she hides) / it hides (it hides) / you hide (you hide) / we hide (we hide) / they hide (they hide)
- I **hid** (I **hid**) / he **hid** (he **hid**) / she **hid** (she **hid**) / it **hid** (it **hid**) / you **hid** (you **hid**) / we **hid** (we **hid**) / they **hid** (they **hid**)
- I will hide (I will hide) / he will hide (he will hide) / she will hide (she will hide) / it will hide (it will hide) / you will hide (you will hide) / we will hide (we will hide) / they will hide (they will hide)



ls5h.mp3

5.13 **I will ask, "Do you have to go?"** You will answer, "Yes. I have to go."
I will ask, "Does she want to leave?" You will answer, "Yes. She wants to leave."



ls5hb.mp3

5.13a Do you have to go?

(Yes. I have to go.) Yes. I have to go. (Yes. I have to go.)

5.13b Does she want to leave?

(Yes. She wants to leave.) Yes. She wants to leave. (Yes. She wants to leave.)

5.13c Does he have to stand?

(Yes. He has to stand.) Yes. He has to stand. (Yes. He has to stand.)

5.13d Do they need to know?

(Yes. They need to know.) Yes. They need to know. (Yes. They need to know.)

5.13e Do you like to talk?

(Yes. I like to talk.) Yes. I like to talk. (Yes. I like to talk.)

5.13f Does it have to cost that much?

(Yes. It has to cost that much.) Yes. It has to cost that much. (Yes. It has to cost that much.)

5.13g Does she need to leave?

(Yes. She needs to leave.) Yes. She needs to leave. (Yes. She needs to leave.)

5.13h Do they want to be together?

(Yes. They want to be together.) Yes. They want to be together. (Yes. They want to be together.)

5.13i Do they have to promise to come?

(Yes. They have to promise to come.) Yes. They have to promise to come. (Yes. They have to promise to come.)

5.13j Does he like to go home?

(Yes. He likes to go home.) Yes. He likes to go home. (Yes. He likes to go home.)

5.13k Does it need to close this evening?

(Yes. It needs to close this evening.) Yes. It needs to close this evening. (Yes. It needs to close this evening.)

5.13l Does she like to work here?

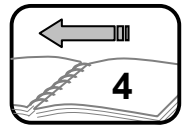
(Yes. She likes to work here.) Yes. She likes to work here. (Yes. She likes to work here.)

5.13m Do we want to be chosen?

(Yes. We want to be chosen.) Yes. We want to be chosen. (Yes. We want to be chosen.)

5.13n Does he want to find work?

(Yes. He wants to find work.) Yes. He wants to find work. (Yes. He wants to find work.)



WORDS THAT REPLACE A NAME

Who is talking?	...to whom?	Whose is it?	
I talk to them.	He talks to me .	It is my book.	It's mine .
He talks to them.	He talks to him .	It is his book.	It's his .
She talks to them.	He talks to her .	It is her book.	It's hers .
It talks to them.	He talks to it .	It is its book.	
You talk to them.	He talks to you .	It is your book.	It's yours .
We talk to them.	He talks to us .	It is our book.	It's ours .
They talk to them.	He talks to them .	It is their book.	It's theirs .

5.10

5.11

Its means that it belongs to **it**. **It is** becomes **it's** when shortened.

DOING SOMETHING WITHOUT HELP

I will do it by myself .	means,	I will do it alone.
He will do it by himself .	means,	He will do it alone.
She will do it by herself .	means,	She will do it alone.
It will do it by itself .	means,	It will do it alone.
You will do it by yourself .	means,	You will do it alone.
You will do it by yourselves .	means,	You and at least one other person will do it together, but no one else will help you.
We will do it by ourselves .	means,	I and at least one other person will do it together, but no one else will help us.
They will do it by themselves .	means,	Two or more people will do it together, but no one else will help them.

MAKING A STRONG EMPHASIS

I did it myself . means,	I, and only I, did it.
He (or John) did it himself . means,	He (or John), and only he (or John), did it.
She (or Jane) did it herself . means,	She (or Jane), and only she (or Jane), did it.
You did it yourself . means,	You, and only you alone, did it.
You did it yourselves . means,	You and at least one other person, and only you and that other person (or those other people), did it.
We did it ourselves . means,	I and at least one other person, and only I and that other person (or those other people), did it.
They did it themselves . means,	Two or more people, and only those two or more people, did it.

"To," "Two," AND "Too"

To = ➡

I gave the book ➡ John. = I gave the book **to** John.

Two 1 + 1 = 2

I gave John 2 books. = I gave John **two** books.

Too = excess

I gave John more books than he wants. = I gave John **too** many books.

Too = also

I also gave a book to Mary. = I gave a book to Mary, **too**.

HOW LONG DOES IT TAKE?

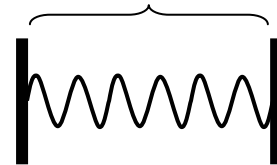
TOMORROW (Future)

I will call



I will call at three o'clock tomorrow.
I will be calling tomorrow afternoon.

I will be calling



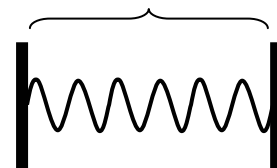
TODAY (Present)

she calls



She calls me every day.
She is calling about the emergency.

she is calling



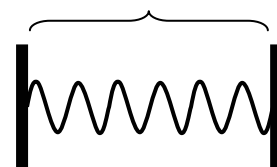
YESTERDAY (Past)

we called

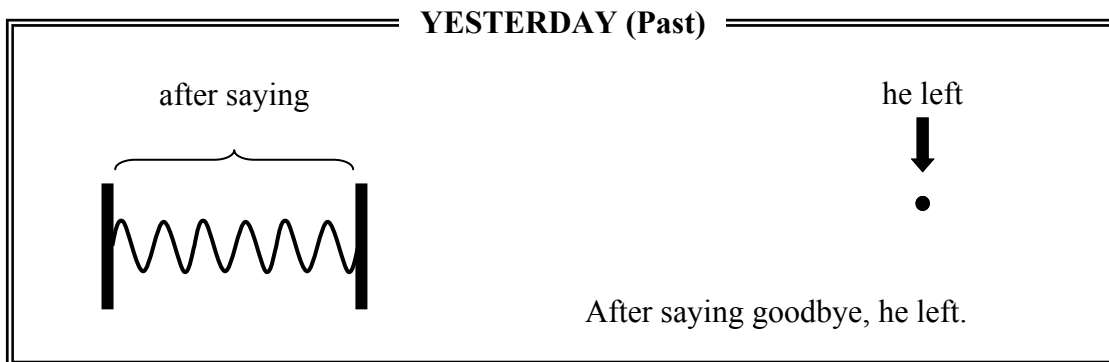
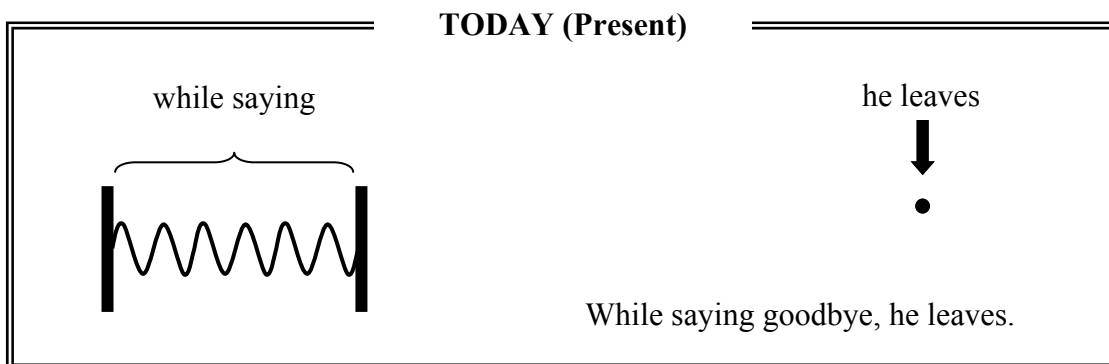
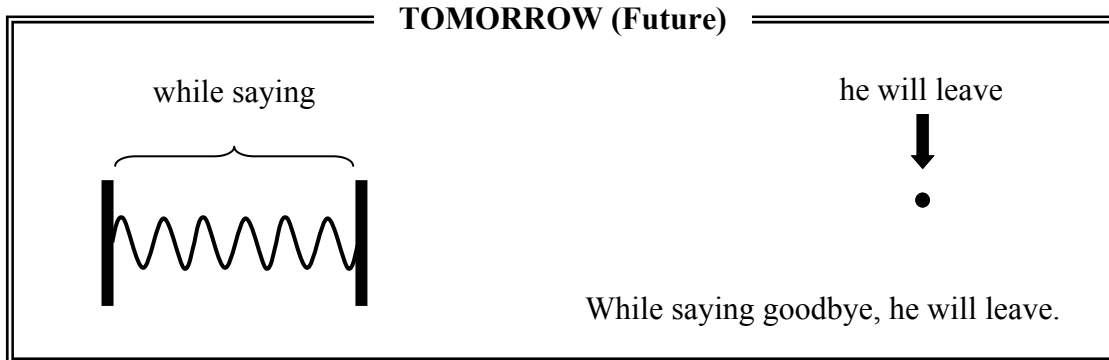


We called at seven o'clock.
We were calling all evening.

we were calling



DOING TWO THINGS TOGETHER



PRONOUNCING "...ED"

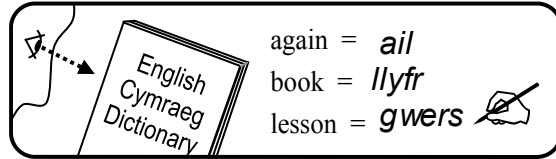


after ...a		
after ...c		
after ...be	bribed	brib d
after ...ge	judged	judg d
after ...ke	liked	lik t
after ...pe	hoped	hop e t
after ...se	used	us e d
after ...ue	continued	contin u d
after ...we	owe	ow e d
after ...f		
after ...h	reached	reach t
after ...j		
after ...l	called	call d
after ...n	listened	lis' e nd
after ...p	helped	help t
after ...r	ordered	order d
after ...t	waited	wait e d
after ...u		
after ...w	reviewed	review d
after ...y	studied	stud i d



after ...b		
after ...d	recorded	record e d
after ...ce	pronounced	pronounc e t
after ...ie	died	d i e d
after ...le	handled	handl e d
after ...se	promised	prom i s e d
after ...te	substituted	substitut e d
after ...ve	lived	liv e d
after ...ze	realized	realiz e d
after ...g	begged	begg e d
after ...i		
after ...k	talked	talk e d
after ...m	exclaimed	exclaim e d
after ...o		
after ...q		
after ...s	dressed	dress t
after ...th	breathed	breath e d
after ...v		
after ...x	fixed	fix t
after ...z	criticized	critic i z e d

LESSON 5 VOCABULARY



along

at least

else

emphasis

excess

her

hers

herself

himself

its

mine

myself

our

ours

ourselves

statement

theirs

themselves

to replace

too

us

whom

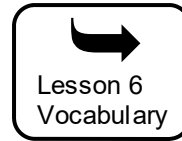
whose

yours

yourself

yourselves

LESSON 6: EXERCISE LESSON



ls6a.mp3



ls6ab.mp3

6.1 Lesson Text 2:14-47 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

Then Peter stood up with the other eleven apostles (Then Peter stood up with the other eleven apostles) / and in a loud voice began to speak to the crowd. (and in a loud voice began to speak to the crowd.) / Listen to me and let me tell you what this means. (listen to me and let me tell you what this means.) / These people are not drunk, as you suppose; (These people are not drunk, as you suppose;) / it is only nine o'clock in the morning. (it is only nine o'clock in the morning.) / These people are not drunk, as you suppose; it is only nine o'clock in the morning. (These people are not drunk, as you suppose; it is only nine o'clock in the morning.)

Jesus of Nazareth was a man (Jesus of Nazareth was a man) / whose divine authority was clearly proven to you (whose divine authority was clearly proven to you) / Jesus of Nazareth was a man whose divine authority was clearly proven to you (Jesus of Nazareth was a man whose divine authority was clearly proven to you) / by all the miracles and wonders (by all the miracles and wonders) / which God performed through him. (which God performed through him.) / by all the miracles and wonders which God performed through him. (by all the miracles and wonders which God performed through him.)

You yourselves know this, (You yourselves know this,) / for it happened here among you. (for it happened here among you.) / In accordance with his own plan (In accordance with his own plan) / God had already decided (God had already decided) / that Jesus would be handed over to you; (that Jesus would be handed

over to you;) / In accordance with his own plan God had already decided that Jesus would be handed over to you; (In accordance with his own plan God had already decided that Jesus would be handed over to you;) / and you killed him by letting sinful men crucify him. (and you killed him by letting sinful men crucify him.)

But God raised him from death, (but God raised him from death,) / setting him free from its power, (setting him free from its power,) / because it was impossible that death should hold him prisoner. (because it was impossible that death should hold him prisoner.) / But God raised him from death, setting him free from its power, because it was impossible that death should hold him prisoner. (But God raised him from death, setting him free from its power, because it was impossible that death should hold him prisoner.)

My friends, I must speak to you plainly (My friends, I must speak to you plainly) / about our famous ancestor King David. (about our famous ancestor King David.) / He died and was buried, (He died and was buried,) / and his grave is here with us to this very day. (and his grave is here with us to this very day.) / He was a prophet, and he knew what God had promised him: (He was a prophet, and he knew what God had promised him:) / God had made a vow (God had made a vow) that he would make one of David's descendants (that he would make one of David's descendants) a king, just as David was. (a king, just as David was.)



ls6b.mp3



ls6bb.mp3

David saw what God was going to do in the future, (David saw what God was going to do in the future,) / and so he spoke about the resurrection of the Messiah when he said, (and so he spoke about the resurrection of the Messiah when he

said,) / He was not abandoned in the world of the dead; (He was not abandoned in the world of the dead;) / his body did not rot in the grave. (his body did not rot in the grave.)

God has raised this very Jesus from death, (God has raised this very Jesus from death,) / and we are all witnesses to this fact. (and we are all witnesses to this fact.) / He has been raised (He has been raised) to the right side of God, his Father, (to the right side of God, his Father,) / and has received from him the Holy Spirit, as he had promised. (and has received from him the Holy Spirit, as he had promised.)

What you now see and hear (What you now see and hear) / is his gift that he has poured out on us. (is his gift that he has poured out on us.) / All the people of Israel, then, are to know for sure (All the people of Israel, then, are to know for sure) / that this Jesus, whom you crucified (that this Jesus, whom you crucified) / is the one that God has made Lord and Messiah. (is the one that God has made Lord and Messiah.)

When the people heard this, (When the people heard this,) / they were deeply troubled (they were deeply troubled) / and said to Peter and the other apostles, (and said to Peter and the other apostles,) / What shall we do, brothers? (What shall we do, brothers?) / and said to Peter and the other apostles, What shall we do, brothers? (and said to Peter and the other apostles, What shall we do, brothers?)

Peter said to them, (Peter said to them,) / Each one of you must turn away from your sins (Each one of you must turn away from your sins) / and be



ls6c.mp3



ls6cb.mp3

baptized in the name of Jesus Christ, (and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ,) / so that your sins will be forgiven; (so that your sins will be forgiven;) / and you will receive God's gift, the Holy Spirit. (and you will receive God's gift, the Holy Spirit.) / so that your sins will be forgiven; and you will receive God's gift, the Holy Spirit. (so that your sins will be forgiven; and you will receive God's gift, the Holy Spirit.) / For God's promise was made to you and your children, (For God's promise was made to you and your children,) and to all who are far away (and to all who are far away) / all whom the Lord our God calls to himself. (all whom the Lord our God calls to himself.)

Peter made his appeal to them (Peter made his appeal to them) / and with many other words (and with many other words) / he urged them, saying, (he urged them, saying,) / Peter made his appeal to them and with many other words he urged them, saying, (Peter made his appeal to them and with many other words he urged them, saying,) / Save yourselves from the punishment (Save yourselves from the punishment) coming on this wicked people. (coming on this wicked people.) / Save yourselves from the punishment coming on this wicked people. (Save yourselves from the punishment coming on this wicked people.)

Many of them believed his message and were baptized, (Many of them believed his message and were baptized,) / and about three thousand people (and about three thousand people) / were added to the group that day. (were added to the group that day.) / and about three thousand people were added to the group that day. (and about three thousand people were added to the group that day.) / They spent their time in learning from the apostles, (They spent their time in learning from the apostles,) / taking part in the fellowship, (taking part in the

fellowship,) / and sharing in the fellowship meals, and the prayers. (and sharing in the fellowship meals, and the prayers.)

(Lesson Text: Today's English Version, Copyright ©1992 by the **ABS** Used by permission. All rights reserved.)

Go to www.ethnicarvest.org/books.html to read the Lesson Text in your language.

LESSON 6: EXERCISE LESSON

6.2 Repeat each sentence.

6.2a Complete the following sentences with "to the loud noise."

I listen (I listen to the loud noise.) / He listens (He listens to the loud noise.) /
You listen (You listen to the loud noise.) / We listen (We listen to the loud
noise.) / They listen (They listen to the loud noise.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to the children."

I listened (I listened to the children.) / She listened (She listened to the
children.) / You listened (You listened to the children.) / We listened (We
listened to the children.) / They listened (They listened to the children.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to him talk."

I will listen (I will listen to him talk.) / She will listen (She will listen to him
talk.) / You will listen (You will listen to him talk.) / We will listen (We will
listen to him talk.) / They will listen (They will listen to him talk.)

6.2b Complete the following sentences with "the time each day."

I decide (I decide the time each day.) / He decides (He decides the time each
day.) / You decide (You decide the time each day.) / We decide (We decide
the time each day.) / They decide (They decide the time each day.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to spend time together with him."

I decided (I decided to spend time together with him.) / She decided (She decided to spend time together with him.) / You decided (You decided to spend time together with him.) / We decided (We decided to spend time together with him.) / They decided (They decided to spend time together with him.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to take part in it."

I will decide (I will decide to take part in it.) / She will decide (She will decide to take part in it.) / You will decide (You will decide to take part in it.) / We will decide (We will decide to take part in it.) / They will decide (They will decide to take part in it.)

6.2c Complete the following sentences with "to speak to her."

I need (I need to speak to her.) / He needs (He needs to speak to her.) / You need (You need to speak to her.) / We need (We need to speak to her.) / They need (They need to speak to her.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to appear yesterday."

I needed (I needed to appear yesterday.) / She needed (She needed to appear yesterday.) / You needed (You needed to appear yesterday.) / We needed (We needed to appear yesterday.) / They needed (They needed to appear yesterday.)

— Complete the following sentences with "a meal tomorrow."

I will need (I will need a meal tomorrow.) / He will need (He will need a meal tomorrow.) / You will need (You will need a meal tomorrow.) / We will need (We will need a meal tomorrow.) / They will need (They will need a meal tomorrow.)

6.2d Complete the following sentences with "in his name."

I forgive (I forgive in his name.) / He forgives (He forgives in his name.) / You forgive (You forgive in his name.) / We forgive (We forgive in his name.) / They forgive (They forgive in his name.)

— Complete the following sentences with "all the people."

I forgave (I **forgave** all the people.) / She **forgave** (She **forgave** all the people.) / You **forgave** (You **forgave** all the people.) / We **forgave** (We **forgave** all the people.) / They **forgave** (They **forgave** all the people.)

— Complete the following sentences with "everyone with your help."

I will forgive (I will forgive everyone with your help.) / He will forgive (He will forgive everyone with your help.) / You will forgive (You will forgive everyone with your help.) / We will forgive (We will forgive everyone with your help.) / They will forgive (They will forgive everyone with your help.)

6.3 **Repeat each sentence at the time I tell you.** I will say, "Yesterday I needed groceries. Today _____." You will answer, "Today I need groceries." Use the same person (I, he, she, we, you or they) in the sentence.

6.3a Yesterday I needed groceries. Today _____.
(Today I need groceries.) Today I need groceries. (Today I need groceries.)

— Today he needs groceries. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow he will need groceries.) Tomorrow he will need groceries.
(Tomorrow he will need groceries.)

— Tomorrow we will need groceries. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday we needed groceries.) Yesterday we needed groceries.
(Yesterday we needed groceries.)

6.3b Yesterday they appealed to the men. Today _____.

(Today they appeal to the men.) Today they appeal to the men. (Today they appeal to the men.)

— Today we appeal to the men. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow we will appeal to the men.) Tomorrow we will appeal to the men. (Tomorrow we will appeal to the men.)

— Tomorrow you will appeal to the men. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday you appealed to the men.) Yesterday you appealed to the men. (Yesterday you appealed to the men.)

6.3c Yesterday you added your brother to the group. Today _____.

(Today you add your brother to the group.) Today you add your brother to the group. (Today you add your brother to the group.)

— Today he adds your brother to the group. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow he will add your brother to the group.) Tomorrow he will add your brother to the group. (Tomorrow he will add your brother to the group.)

— Tomorrow we will add your brother to the group. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday we added your brother to the group.) Yesterday we added your brother to the group. (Yesterday we added your brother to the group.)

6.3d Yesterday they took part in the work. Today _____.

(Today they take part in the work.) Today they take part in the work. (Today they take part in the work.)

— Today they take part in the work. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow they will take part in the work.) Tomorrow they will take part in the work. (Tomorrow they will take part in the work.)

— Tomorrow they will take part in the work. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday they took part in the work.) Yesterday they took part in the work. (Yesterday they took part in the work.)

6.3e Yesterday we decided to help. Today _____.

(Today we decide to help.) Today we decide to help. (Today we decide to help.)

— Today we decide to help. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow we will decide to help.) Tomorrow we will decide to help. (Tomorrow we will decide to help.)

— Tomorrow we will decide to help. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday we decided to help.) Yesterday we decided to help. (Yesterday we decided to help.)

6.3f Yesterday I listened to my father. Today _____.

(Today I listen to my father.) Today I listen to my father. (Today I listen to my father.)



ls6f.mp3



ls6fb.mp3

— Today we listen to our father. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow we will listen to our father.) Tomorrow we will listen to our father. (Tomorrow we will listen to our father.)

— Tomorrow she will listen to her father. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday she listened to her father.) Yesterday she listened to her father. (Yesterday she listened to her father.)

6.3g Yesterday I handed over the money. Today _____.

(Today I hand over the money.) Today I hand over the money. (Today I hand over the money.)

— Today they hand over the money. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow they will hand over the money.) Tomorrow they will hand over the money. (Tomorrow they will hand over the money.)

— Tomorrow you will hand over the money. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday you handed over the money.) Yesterday you handed over the money. (Yesterday you handed over the money.)

6.3h Yesterday you punished him. Today _____.

(Today you punish him.) Today you punish him. (Today you punish him.)

— Today we punish him. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow we will punish him.) Tomorrow we will punish him. (Tomorrow we will punish him.)

— Tomorrow I will punish him. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday I punished him.) Yesterday I punished him. (Yesterday I punish him.)

6.3i Yesterday he was chosen. Today _____.

(Today he is chosen.) Today he is chosen. (Today he is chosen.)

— Today you are chosen. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow you will be chosen.) Tomorrow you will be chosen. (Tomorrow you will be chosen.)

— Tomorrow I will be chosen. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday I was chosen.) Yesterday I was chosen. (Yesterday I was chosen.)

6.3j Yesterday he decided the prisoner's punishment. Today _____.

(Today he decides the prisoner's punishment.) Today he decides the prisoner's punishment. (Today he decides the prisoner's punishment.)

— Today we decide the prisoner's punishment. Tomorrow _____.

(Tomorrow we will decide the prisoner's punishment.) Tomorrow we will decide the prisoner's punishment. (Tomorrow we will decide the prisoner's punishment.)

— Tomorrow you will decide the prisoner's punishment. Yesterday _____.

(Yesterday you decided the prisoner's punishment.) Yesterday you decided the prisoner's punishment. (Yesterday you decided the prisoner's punishment.)

6.4 Repeat each number.

0 [zero]	1 [one]	2 [two]
3 [three]	4 [four]	5 [five]
6 [six]	7 [seven]	8 [eight]
9 [nine]	10 [ten]	11 [eleven]
12 [twelve]	13 [thirteen]	14 [fourteen]
15 [fifteen]	16 [sixteen]	17 [seventeen]
18 [eighteen]	19 [nineteen]	20 [twenty]
30 [thirty]	40 [forty]	50 [fifty]
60 [sixty]	70 [seventy]	80 [eighty]
90 [ninety]	100 [one hundred]	1,000 [one thousand]

6.5 Repeat each word (regular verbs).



ls6g.mp3

6.5a TO DECIDE (to decide) / She promised to decide. (She promised to decide.)



ls6gb.mp3

Decide. (Decide.) / Please decide. (Please decide.)

deciding (deciding) / He is deciding. (He is deciding.)

decided (decided) / it is decided (it is decided) / it was decided (it was decided) / it will be decided (it will be decided)

- I decide (I decide) / he decides (he decides) / she decides (she decides) / it decides (it decides) / you decide (you decide) / we decide (we decide) / they decide (they decide)
- I decided (I decided) / he decided (he decided) / she decided (she decided) / it decided (it decided) / you decided (you decided) / we decided (we decided) / they decided (they decided)

- I will decide (I will decide) / he will decide (he will decide) / she will decide (she will decide) / it will decide (it will decide) / you will decide (you will decide) / we will decide (we will decide) / they will decide (they will decide)

6.5b TO ADD (to add) / She promised to add it. (She promised to add it.)

Add. (Add.) / Please add it. (Please add it.)

adding (adding) / He is adding it. (He is adding it.)

added (added) / it is added (it is added) / it was added (it was added) / it will be added (it will be added)

- I add (I add) / he adds (he adds) / she adds (she adds) / it adds (it adds) / you add (you add) / we add (we add) / they add (they add)
- I added (I added) / he added (he added) / she added (she added) / it added (it added) / you added (you added) / we added (we added) / they added (they added)
- I will add (I will add) / he will add (he will add) / she will add (she will add) / it will add (it will add) / you will add (you will add) / we will add (we will add) / they will add (they will add)

6.5c TO APPEAR (to appear) / She promised to appear. (She promised to appear.)

Appear. (Appear.) / Please appear. (Please appear.)

appearing (appearing) / He is appearing. (He is appearing.)

~~appeared~~: *It is **appeared*** is infrequently or never used.

- I appear (I appear) / he appears (he appears) / she appears (she appears) / it appears (it appears) / you appear (you appear) / we appear (we appear) / they appear (they appear)

- I appeared (I appeared) / he appeared (he appeared) / she appeared (she appeared) / it appeared (it appeared) / you appeared (you appeared) / we appeared (we appeared) / they appeared (they appeared)
- I will appear (I will appear) / he will appear (he will appear) / she will appear (she will appear) / it will appear (it will appear) / you will appear (you will appear) / we will appear (we will appear) / they will appear (they will appear)

6.5d TO HAPPEN (to happen) / She wanted it to happen.

(She wanted it to happen.)

Happen. (Happen.) / Please make it happen. (Please happen.)

happening (happening) / It is happening. (It is happening.)

~~happened~~: *It is **happened*** is infrequently or never used.

- I happen (I happen) / he happens (he happens) / she happens (she happens) / it happens (it happens) / you happen (you happen) / we happen (we happen) / they happen (they happen)
- I happened (I happened) / he happened (he happened) / she happened (she happened) / it happened (it happened) / you happened (you happened) / we happened (we happened) / they happened (they happened)
- I will happen (I will happen) / he will happen (he will happen) / she will happen (she will happen) / it will happen (it will happen) / you will happen (you will happen) / we will happen (we will happen) / they will happen (they will happen)

6.5e TO LEARN (to learn) / She promised to learn. (She promised to learn.)

Learn. (Learn.) / Please learn. (Please learn.)



ls6h.mp3



ls6hb.mp3

learning (learning) / He is learning. (He is learning.)

learned (learned) / it is learned (it is learned) / it was learned (it was learned)
/ it will be learned (it will be learned)

- I learn (I learn) / he learns (he learns) / she learns (she learns) / it learns (it learns) / you learn (you learn) / we learn (we learn) / they learn (they learn)
- I learned (I learned) / he learned (he learned) / she learned (she learned) / it learned (it learned) / you learned (you learned) / we learned (we learned) / they learned (they learned)
- I will learn (I will learn) / he will learn (he will learn) / she will learn (she will learn) / it will learn (it will learn) / you will learn (you will learn) / we will learn (we will learn) / they will learn (they will learn)

6.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).

6.6a **TO HOLD** (to hold) / She promised to hold it. (She promised to hold it.)

Hold. (Hold.) / Please hold it. (Please hold it.)

holding (holding) / She is holding it. (He is holding it.)

held (held) / it is **held** (it is **held**) / it was **held** (it was **held**) / it will be **held**
(it will be **held**)

- I hold (I hold) / he holds (he holds) / she holds (she holds) / it holds (it holds) / you hold (you hold) / we hold (we hold) / they hold (they hold)
- I **held** (I **held**) / he **held** (he **held**) / she **held** (she **held**) / it **held** (it **held**) / you **held** (you **held**) / we **held** (we **held**) / they **held** (they **held**)
- I will hold (I will hold) / he will hold (he will hold) / she will hold (she will hold) / it will hold (it will hold) / you will hold (you will hold) / we will hold (we will hold) / they will hold (they will hold)

6.6b **TO LET** (to let) / She promised to let them. (She promised to let them.)

Let. (Let.) / Please let them. (Please let them.)

letting (letting) / He is letting it go. (He is letting it go.)

let (let) / it is **let** (it is **let**) / it was **let** (it was **let**) / it will be **let** (it will be **let**)

- I let (I let) / he lets (he lets) / she lets (she lets) / it lets (it lets) / you let (you let) / we let (we let) / they let (they let)
- I **let** (I **let**) / he **let** (he **let**) / she **let** (she **let**) / it **let** (it **let**) / you **let** (you **let**) / we **let** (we **let**) / they **let** (they **let**)
- I will let (I will let) / he will let (he will let) / she will let (she will let) / it will let (it will let) / you will let (you will let) / we will let (we will let) / they will let (they will let)

6.6c **TO SEE** (to see) / She promised to see it. (She promised to see it.)

See. (See.) / Please see it. (Please see it.)

seeing (seeing) / Seeing is important. (Seeing is important.)

seen (seen) / it is **seen** (it is **seen**) / it was **seen** (it was **seen**) / it will be **seen** (it will be **seen**)

- I see (I see) / he sees (he sees) / she sees (she sees) / it sees (it sees) / you see (you see) / we see (we see) / they see (they see)
- I **saw** (I **saw**) / he **saw** (he **saw**) / she **saw** (she **saw**) / it **saw** (it **saw**) / you **saw** (you **saw**) / we **saw** (we **saw**) / they **saw** (they **saw**)
- I will see (I will see) / he will see (he will see) / she will see (she will see) / it will see (it will see) / you will see (you will see) / we will see (we will see) / they will see (they will see)

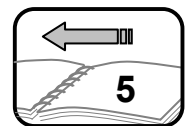
6.6d **TO SPEND** (to spend) / She promised to spend something. (She promised to spend something.)

Spend. (Spend.) / Please spend something. (Please spend something.)

spending (spending) / He is spending. (He is spending.)

spent (spent) / it is **spent** (it is **spent**) / it was **spent** (it was **spent**) / it will be **spent** (it will be **spent**)

- I spend (I spend) / he spends (he spends) / she spends (she spends) / it spends (it spends) / you spend (you spend) / we spend (we spend) / they spend (they spend)
- I **spent** (I **spent**) / he **spent** (he **spent**) / she **spent** (she **spent**) / it **spent** (it **spent**) / you **spent** (you **spent**) / we **spent** (we **spent**) / they **spent** (they **spent**)
- I will spend (I will spend) / he will spend (he will spend) / she will spend (she will spend) / it will spend (it will spend) / you will spend (you will spend) / we will spend (we will spend) / they will spend (they will spend)



PUTTING WORDS IN THEIR CORRECT PLACE

(My name)	}	go(es) home.	I	}	go(es) home.
John			He		
Jane			She		
The thing			It		
(Your name)			You		
Jane and I			We		
John and Mary			They		

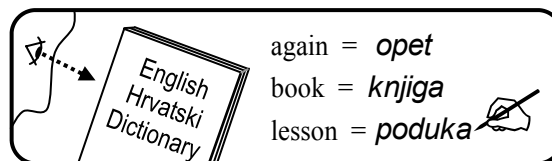
He promised the house to me.	➡	He promised it to me.
I brought the instructions to you.	➡	I brought them to you.
His wife gave Mary the money .	➡	His wife gave it to Mary.
They will give the car to you.	➡	They will give it to you.
He gave Jane the books .	➡	He gave them to Jane.

USING THE CORRECT WORD

He goes .	John = he	John goes .
We go .	John and I = we	John and I go .
They go .	John and Peter = they	John and Peter go .
It comes .	the bus = it	The bus comes .
They come .	the car and bus = they	The car and bus come together.

Everyone = 1 person	she runs	Everyone runs fast.
Everything = 1 thing	it works	Everything works okay.
Someone = 1 person	he is	Someone is listening.
Something = 1 thing	it is	Something is strange.
Both = 2 persons or things	they were	Both children were good.
All = 2 or more	they stand	All the people must stand .

LESSON 6 VOCABULARY



accordance	impossibility	to be far away
addition	king	to bury
ancestor	loud, louder, loudest,	to decide
appeal	loudly	to die
body	meal	to forgive
both	message	to hand
brother	miracle	to hand over
burial	performance	to happen
clear, clearer, clearest,	performer	to hold
clearly	plain, plainly	to kill
correct	plan	to let
decision	prayer	to listen
deep, deeper, deepest,	prisoner	to need
deeply	prophet	to perform
descendant	punishment	to pour
everyone	resurrection	to punish
fact	right side	to put
famous, famously	savings	to raise
fellow	someone	to receive
fellowship	to abandon	to rot
forgiveness	to add	to save
future	to appeal	to set
gift	to be	to set free
grave	to be buried	to share
impossible	to be crucified	to spend

to suppose	to urge	vow
to trouble	to vow	wicked, wickedly
to turn	trouble	wonder
to turn away	voice	

Expressions

You yourselves know this, for it happened here among you. (2:22)

He saw what was going to happen in the future, **and so** he spoke about it. (2:31)

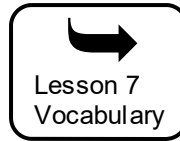
When the people heard this, **they were** deeply troubled. (2:37)

Each one of you must change **so that** you will be forgiven. (2:38)

Many of them **listened** to what he said and **believed**, and many were **added** to the group that day. (2:41)

They spent their time **learning** from their teachers, **taking** part in the meetings, and **sharing** in the meals. (2:42)

LESSON 7: EXERCISE LESSON



ls7a.mp3



ls7ab.mp3

7.1 Lesson Text 3:1-10 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

One day Peter and John went to the Temple (One day Peter and John went to the Temple) / at three o'clock in the afternoon, (at three o'clock in the afternoon,) / the hour for prayer. (the hour for prayer.) / One day Peter and John went to the Temple at three o'clock in the afternoon, the hour for prayer. (One day Peter and John went to the Temple at three o'clock in the afternoon, the hour for prayer.)

There at the Beautiful Gate, (There at the Beautiful Gate,) / as it was called, (as it was called,) / was a man who had been lame all his life. (was a man who had been lame all his life.) / There at the Beautiful Gate, as it was called, was a man who had been lame all his life. (There at the Beautiful Gate, as it was called, was a man who had been lame all his life.) / There at the Beautiful Gate, as it was called, was a man who had been lame all his life. (There at the Beautiful Gate, as it was called, was a man who had been lame all his life.)

Every day he was carried to the gate (Every day he was carried to the gate) / to beg for money (to beg for money) / from the people who were going into the Temple. (from the people who were going into the Temple.) / Every day he was carried to the gate to beg for money from the people who were going into the Temple. (Every day he was carried to the gate to beg for money from the people who were going into the Temple.) / When he saw Peter and John going in, (When he saw Peter and John going in,) / he begged them to give him

something. (he begged them to give him something.) / When he saw Peter and John going in, he begged them to give him something. (When he saw Peter and John going in, he begged them to give him something.)

They looked straight at him, (They looked straight at him,) / and Peter said Look at us. (and Peter said Look at us.) / They looked straight at him, and Peter said, Look at us. (They looked straight at him, and Peter said, Look at us.) / So he looked at them, (So he looked at them,) expecting to get something from them. (expecting to get something from them.) / So he looked at them, expecting to get something from them. (So he looked at them, expecting to get something from them.)

But Peter said to him, (But Peter said to him,) / I have no money at all, (I have no money at all,) / But Peter said to him, I have no money at all, (But Peter said to him, I have no money at all,) / but I give you what I have: (but I give you what I have:) / in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. (in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth.) / but I give you what I have: in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. (but I give you what I have: in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth.) / I order you to get up and walk. (I order you to get up and walk.) / I order you to get up and walk. (I order you to get up and walk.)

Then he took him by his right hand (Then he took him by his right hand) / and helped him up. (and helped him up.) / Then he took him by his right hand and helped him up. (Then he took him by his right hand and helped him up.) / Then he took him by his right hand and helped him up. (Then he took him by his right hand and helped him up.) / At once the man's feet and ankles became strong; (At



ls7b.mp3



ls7bb.mp3

once the man's feet and ankles became strong;) / he jumped up, (he jumped up,) / stood on his feet, (stood on his feet,) / and started walking around. (and started walking around.) / At once the man's feet and ankles became strong; he jumped up, stood on his feet, and started walking around. (At once the man's feet and ankles became strong; he jumped up, stood on his feet, and started walking around.)

Then he went into the Temple with them, (Then he went into the Temple with them,) / walking and jumping and praising God. (walking and jumping and praising God.) / Then he went into the Temple with them, walking and jumping and praising God. (Then he went into the Temple with them, walking and jumping and praising God.) / Then he went into the Temple with them, walking and jumping and praising God. (Then he went into the Temple with them, walking and jumping and praising God.)

The people there saw him (The people there saw him) / walking and praising God, (walking and praising God,) / and when they recognized him as the beggar (and when they recognized him as the beggar) / who had sat at the Beautiful Gate. (who had sat at the Beautiful Gate.) / The people there saw him walking and praising God, and when they recognized him as the beggar who had sat at the Beautiful Gate. (The people there saw him walking and praising God, and when they recognized him as the beggar who had sat at the Beautiful Gate.)

They were all surprised and amazed (They were all surprised and amazed) / at what had happened to him. (at what had happened to him.) / They were all surprised and amazed at what had happened to him. (They

were all surprised and amazed at what had happened to him.) / They were all surprised and amazed at what had happened to him. (They were all surprised and amazed at what had happened to him.)

(Lesson Text: Today's English Version, Copyright ©1992 by the **ABS** Used by permission. All rights reserved.)

Go to www.ethnicarvest.org/books.html to read the Lesson Text in your language.

LESSON 7: EXERCISE LESSON



ls7c.mp3

7.2 Repeat each word (regular verbs).



ls7cb.mp3

7.2a TO JUMP (to jump) / He promised not to jump. (He promised not to jump.)

Jump. (Jump.) / Please jump. (Please jump.)

jumping (jumping) / He is jumping. (He is jumping.)

jumped (jumped) / he is jumped (he is jumped) / she was jumped (she was jumped) / they will be jumped (they will be jumped)

- I jump (I jump) / he jumps (he jumps) / she jumps (she jumps) / it jumps (it jumps) / you jump (you jump) / we jump (we jump) / they jump (they jump)
- I jumped (I jumped) / he jumped (he jumped) / she jumped (she jumped) / it jumped (it jumped) / you jumped (you jumped) / we jumped (we jumped) / they jumped (they jumped)
- I will jump (I will jump) / he will jump (he will jump) / she will jump (she will jump) / it will jump (it will jump) / you will jump (you will jump) / we will jump (we will jump) / they will jump (they will jump)

7.2b TO WALK (to walk) / He promised to walk. (He promised to walk.)

Walk. (Walk.) / Please walk. (Please walk.)

walking (walking) / He is walking. (He is walking.)

walked (walked) / she is walked (she is walked) / they were walked (they were walked) / we will be walked (we will be walked)

- I walk (I walk) / he walks (he walks) / she walks (she walks) / it walks (it walks) / you walk (you walk) / we walk (we walk) / they walk (they walk)

- I walked (I walked) / he walked (he walked) / she walked (she walked) / it walked (it walked) / you walked (you walked) / we walked (we walked) / they walked (they walked)
- I will walk (I will walk) / he will walk (he will walk) / she will walk (she will walk) / it will walk (it will walk) / you will walk (you will walk) / we will walk (we will walk) / they will walk (they will walk)

7.2c TO EXPECT (to expect) / He promised to expect it.

(He promised to expect it.)

Expect. (Expect.) / Please expect it. (Please expect it.)

expecting (expecting) / He is expecting it. (He is expecting it.)

expected (expected) / it is expected (it is expected) / it was expected (it was expected) / it will be expected (it will be expected)

- I expect (I expect) / he expects (he expects) / she expects (she expects) / it expects (it expects) / you expect (you expect) / we expect (we expect) / they expect (they expect)
- I expected (I expected) / he expected (he expected) / she expected (she expected) / it expected (it expected) / you expected (you expected) / we expected (we expected) / they expected (they expected)
- I will expect (I will expect) / he will expect (he will expect) / she will expect (she will expect) / it will expect (it will expect) / you will expect (you will expect) / we will expect (we will expect) / they will expect (they will expect)

7.2d TO BEG (to beg) / He promised not to beg. (He promised not to beg.)

Beg. (Beg.) / Please don't beg for it. (Please don't beg for it.)

begging (begging) / He is begging for it. (He is begging for it.)

~~begged~~: It is **begged** is infrequently or never used.

- I beg (I beg) / he begs (he begs) / she begs (she begs) / it begs (it begs) / you beg (you beg) / we beg (we beg) / they beg (they beg)
- I begged (I begged) / he begged (he begged) / she begged (she begged) / it begged (it begged) / you begged (you begged) / we begged (we begged) / they begged (they begged)
- I will beg (I will beg) / he will beg (he will beg) / she will beg (she will beg) / it will beg (it will beg) / you will beg (you will beg) / we will beg (we will beg) / they will beg (they will beg)



ls7d.mp3

7.3 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).



ls7db.mp3

7.3a **TO BECOME** (to become) / He promised to become. (He promised to become.)

Become. (Become.) / Please become. (Please become.)

becoming (becoming) / He is becoming. (He is becoming.)

~~become~~: *It is **become*** is infrequently or never used.

- I become (I become) / he becomes (he becomes) / she becomes (she becomes) / it becomes (it becomes) / you become (you become) / we become (we become) / they become (they become)
- I **became** (I **became**) / he **became** (he **became**) / she **became** (she **became**) / it **became** (it **became**) / you **became** (you **became**) / we **became** (we **became**) / they **became** (they **became**)
- I will become (I will become) / he will become (he will become) / she will become (she will become) / it will become (it will become) / you will become (you will become) / we will become (we will become) / they will become (they will become)

7.3b TO GET (to get) / He promised to get it. (He promised to get it.)

Get. (Get.) / Please get it. (Please get it.)

getting (getting) / He is getting it. (He is getting it.)

~~gotten~~: *It is **gotten*** is infrequently or never used.

- I get (I get) / he gets (he gets) / she gets (she gets) / it gets (it gets) / you get (you get) / we get (we get) / they get (they get)
- I **got** (I **got**) / he **got** (he **got**) / she **got** (she **got**) / it **got** (it **got**) / you **got** (you **got**) / we **got** (we **got**) / they **got** (they **got**)
- I will get (I will get) / he will get (he will get) / she will get (she will get) / it will get (it will get) / you will get (you will get) / we will get (we will get) / they will get (they will get)

7.3c TO THROW (to throw) / He promised to throw it. (He promised to throw it.)

Throw. (Throw.) / Please throw it. (Please throw it.)

throwing (throwing) / He is throwing it. (He is throwing it.)

thrown (**thrown**) / it is **thrown** (it is **thrown**) / it was **thrown** (it was **thrown**) / it will be **thrown** (it will be **thrown**)

- I throw (I throw) / he throws (he throws) / she throws (she throws) / it throws (it throws) / you throw (you throw) / we throw (we throw) / they throw (they throw)
- I **threw** (I **threw**) / he **threw** (he **threw**) / she **threw** (she **threw**) / it **threw** (it **threw**) / you **threw** (you **threw**) / we **threw** (we **threw**) / they **threw** (they **threw**)
- I will throw (I will throw) / he will throw (he will throw) / she will throw (she will throw) / it will throw (it will throw) / you will throw (you will throw) / we will throw (we will throw) / they will throw (they will throw)

7.3d TO BITE (to bite) / They promised not to bite. (They promised not to bite.)

bite. (bite.) / Please bite it. (Please bite it.)

biting (biting) / He is biting it. (He is biting it.)

bitten (bitten) / it is **bitten** (it is **bitten**) / it was **bitten** (it was **bitten**) / it will be **bitten** (it will be **bitten**)

- I bite (I bite) / he bites (he bites) / she bites (she bites) / it bites (it bites) / you bite (you bite) / we bite (we bite) / they bite (they bite)
- I **bit** (I **bit**) / he **bit** (he **bit**) / she **bit** (she **bit**) / it **bit** (it **bit**) / you **bit** (you **bit**) / we **bit** (we **bit**) / they **bit** (they **bit**)
- I will bite (I will bite) / he will bite (he will bite) / she will bite (she will bite) / it will bite (it will bite) / you will bite (you will bite) / we will bite (we will bite) / they will bite (they will bite)

7.3e TO BUILD (to build) / He promised to build it. (He promised to build it.)

Build. (Build.) / Please build here. (Please build here.)

building (building) / He is building it. (He is building it.)

built (built) / it is **built** (it is **built**) / it was **built** (it was **built**) / it will be **built** (it will be **built**)

- I build (I build) / he builds (he builds) / she builds (she builds) / it builds (it builds) / you build (you build) / we build (we build) / they build (they build)
- I **built** (I **built**) / he **built** (he **built**) / she **built** (she **built**) / it **built** (it **built**) / you **built** (you **built**) / we **built** (we **built**) / they **built** (they **built**)
- I will build (I will build) / he will build (he will build) / she will build (she will build) / it will build (it will build) / you will build (you will build) / we will build (we will build) / they will build (they will build)

7.4 **I will ask, "Do you have any money?"** You will answer, "No, I don't have any money, but I will give you what I have."

7.4a Do you have any money?

(No, I don't have any money, but I will give you what I have.) No, I don't have any money, but I will give you what I have. (No, I don't have any money, but I will give you what I have.)

7.4b Do you have any water?

(No, I don't have any water, but I will give you what I have.) No, I don't have any water, but I will give you what I have. (No, I don't have any water, but I will give you what I have.)

7.4c Do you have any cash?

(No, I don't have any cash, but I will give you what I have.) No, I don't have any cash, but I will give you what I have. (No, I don't have any cash, but I will give you what I have.)

7.4d Do you have any gifts?

(No, I don't have any gifts, but I will give you what I have.) No, I don't have any gifts, but I will give you what I have. (No, I don't have any gifts, but I will give you what I have.)

7.4e Do you have any groceries?

(No, I don't have any groceries, but I will give you what I have.) No, I don't have any groceries, but I will give you what I have. (No, I don't have any groceries, but I will give you what I have.)

7.5 Repeat each sentence.

7.5a Complete the following sentences with "walking and jumping."

I recognize that I am (I recognize that I am walking and jumping.) / He recognizes that he is (He recognizes that he is walking and jumping.) / You recognize that you are (You recognize that you are walking and jumping.) / We recognize that we are (We recognize that we are walking and jumping.) / They recognize that they are (They recognize that they are walking and jumping.)

— Complete the following sentences with "listening and watching."

I recognized that I was (I recognized that I was listening and watching.) / She recognized that she was (She recognized that she was listening and watching.) / You recognized that you were (You recognized that you were listening and watching.) / We recognized that we were (We recognized that we were listening and watching.) / They recognized that they were (They recognized that they were listening and watching.)

— Complete the following sentences with "her this afternoon."

I will recognize (I will recognize her this afternoon.) / He will recognize (He will recognize her this afternoon.) / You will recognize (You will recognize her this afternoon.) / We will recognize (We will recognize her this afternoon.) / They will recognize (They will recognize her this afternoon.)

7.5b Complete the following sentences with "that I (or another person) am lame."

I **am** surprised (I **am** surprised that I am lame.) / He **is** surprised (He **is** surprised that he is lame.) / You **are** surprised (You **are** surprised that you are lame.) / We **are** surprised (We **are** surprised that we are lame.) / They **are** surprised (They **are** surprised that they are lame.)

— Complete the following sentences with "that I (or another person) told the children to come."

I **was** surprised (I **was** surprised that I told the children to come.) / She **was** surprised (She **was** surprised that she told the children to come.) / You **were** surprised (You **were** surprised that you told the children to come.) / We **were** surprised (We **were** surprised that we told the children to come.) / They **were** surprised (They **were** surprised that they told the children to come.)

— Complete the following sentences with "this afternoon."

I will be surprised (I will be surprised this afternoon.) / He will be surprised (He will be surprised this afternoon.) / You will be surprised (You will be surprised this afternoon.) / We will be surprised (We will be surprised this afternoon.) / They will be surprised (They will be surprised this afternoon.)

7.5c Complete the following sentences with "the books outside every day."

I already carry (I already carry the books outside every day.) / She already carries (She already carries the books outside every day.) / You already carry (You already carry the books outside every day.) / We already carry (We already carry the books outside every day.) / They already carry (They already carry the books outside every day.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the whole thing."

I carried (I carried the whole thing.) / She carried (She carried the whole thing.) / You carried (You carried the whole thing.) / We carried (We carried the whole thing.) / They carried (They carried the whole thing.)

— Complete the following sentences with "it to the gate on foot."

I will carry (I will carry it to the gate on foot.) / He will carry (He will carry it to the gate on foot.) / You will carry (You will carry it to the gate on foot.) / We will carry (We will carry it to the gate on foot.) / They will carry (They will carry it to the gate on foot.)

7.5d Complete the following sentences with "in front when he gets up."

I look (I look in front when he gets up.) / She looks (She looks in front when he gets up.) / You look (You look in front when he gets up.) / We look (We look in front when he gets up.) / They look (They look in front when he gets up.)

— Complete the following sentences with "across the water at once."

I looked (I looked across the water at once.) / She looked (She looked across the water at once.) / You looked (You looked across the water at once.) / We looked (We looked across the water at once.) / They looked (They looked across the water at once.)

— Complete the following sentences with "inside and behind the house."

I will look (I will look inside and behind the house.) / He will look (He will look inside and behind the house.) / You will look (You will look inside and behind the house.) / We will look (We will look inside and behind the house.) / They will look (They will look inside and behind the house.)

7.5e Complete the following sentences with "anything under this book."

I don't put (I don't put anything under this book.) / He doesn't put (He doesn't put anything under this book.) / You don't put (You don't put anything under this book.) / We don't put (We don't put anything under this book.) / They don't put (They don't put anything under this book.)

— Complete the following sentences with "them between the men."

I didn't **put** (I didn't **put** them between the men.) / She didn't **put** (She didn't **put** them between the men.) / You didn't **put** (You didn't **put** them between the men.) / We didn't **put** (We didn't **put** them between the men.) / They didn't **put** (They didn't put them between the men.)

— Complete the following sentences with "anything near the fire."

I won't put (I won't put anything near the fire.) / He won't put (He won't put anything near the fire.) / You won't put (You won't put anything near the fire.) / We won't put (We won't put anything near the fire.) / They won't put (They won't put anything near the fire.)



ls7g.mp3

7.6 Repeat each letter of the alphabet.



ls7gb.mp3

A / a	B / b	C / c	D / d	E / e	F / f	G / g
H / h	I / i	J / j	K / k	L / l	M / m	N / n
O / o	P / p	Q / q	R / r	S / s	T / t	U / u
V / v	W / w	X / x	Y / y	Z / z		

7.7 Before each sentence say, "They were surprised and amazed at what had happened." I will say, "He was walking and jumping." You will say, "They were surprised and amazed at what had happened. He was walking and jumping."

7.7a He was walking and jumping.

(They were surprised and amazed at what had happened. He was walking and jumping.) They were surprised and amazed at what had happened. He was walking and jumping. (They were surprised and amazed at what had happened. He was walking and jumping.)

7.7f He took the man's right hand and raised him up.

(They were surprised and amazed at what had happened. He took the man's right hand and raised him up.) They were surprised and amazed at what had happened. He took the man's right hand and raised him up. (They were surprised and amazed at what had happened. He took the man's right hand and raised him up.)



ls7h.mp3

7.8 **Repeat each sentence substituting "he" for "John."** Say "yesterday," "today," or "tomorrow" for the time. You may also use "then" or "now."



ls7hb.mp3

7.8a I told you what John said.

(I told you yesterday what he said then.) I told you yesterday what he said then. (I told you yesterday what he said then.)

7.8b I am telling you what John said.

(I am telling you today what he said yesterday.) I am telling you today what he said yesterday. (I am telling you today what he said yesterday.)

7.8c I will tell you what John said.

(I will tell you tomorrow what he said yesterday.) I will tell you tomorrow what he said yesterday. (I will tell you tomorrow what he said yesterday.)

7.8d I told you what John is saying.

(I told you yesterday what he is saying today.) I told you yesterday what he is saying today. (I told you yesterday what he is saying today.)

7.8e I told you what John will say.

(I told you yesterday what he will say tomorrow.) I told you yesterday what he will say tomorrow. (I told you yesterday what he will say tomorrow.)

7.8f I am telling you what John said.

(I am telling you today what he said yesterday.) I am telling you today what he said yesterday. (I am telling you today what he said yesterday.)

7.8g I am telling you what John is saying.

(I am telling you today what he is saying now.) I am telling you today what he is saying now. (I am telling you today what he is saying now.)

7.8h I am telling you what John will say.

(I am telling you today what he will say tomorrow.) I am telling you today what he will say tomorrow. (I am telling you today what he will say tomorrow.)

7.8i I will tell you what John said.

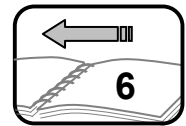
(I will tell you tomorrow what he said yesterday.) I will tell you tomorrow what he said yesterday. (I will tell you tomorrow what he said yesterday.)

7.8j I will tell you what John is saying.

(I will tell you tomorrow what he is saying today.) I will tell you tomorrow what he is saying today. (I will tell you tomorrow what he is saying today.)

7.8k I will tell you what John will say.

I will tell you tomorrow what he will say then.) I will tell you tomorrow
what he will say then. (I will tell you tomorrow what he will say then.)



USING APOSTROPHES

John's book	The book belongs to John.
the brothers' book	The book belongs to two or more brothers.
the man's car	The car belongs to one man.
the men's car	One car belongs to two or more men.
the witness's (or witness') book	The book belongs to one witness.
the witness's (or witness') books	One witness owns more than one book.
the witnesses' book	The book belongs to two or more witnesses.
the witnesses' books	Two or more witnesses each own more than one book.
the witnesses are looking at a book	Two or more witnesses are looking at books they each own.
the witnesses are looking at their books	Two or more witnesses are looking at one or more books they each own. or Two or more witnesses are looking at two or more books they all own together.
someone's car	The car belongs to someone.
something's help	The help belongs to something.
something's open	Something is open.

SOME EXAMPLES OF TWO WORDS BECOMING ONE

I + am = Iam = I'm	I'm fine.
it + is = itis = it's	It's fine.
he + is = heis = he's	He's fine.
she + is = sheis = she's	She's fine.
we + are = weare = we're	We're fine.
you + are = youare = you're	You're fine.
they + are = theyare = they're	They're fine.
that + is = thatis = that's	That's okay.
I + will = Iwill = I'll	I'll pay the money.
he + will = hewill = he'll	He'll pay the money.
she + will = shewill = she'll	She'll pay the money.
it + will = itwill = it'll	It'll pay the money.
we + will = wewill = we'll	We'll pay the money.
you + will = youwill = you'll	You'll pay the money.
they + will = theywill = they'll	They'll pay the money.
that + will = thatwill = that'll	That'll be fine.
this + will = thiswill = this'll	This'll be fine.
I + have = Ihave = I've	I've taken the money.
he + has = hehas = he's	He's taken the money.
she + has = shehas = she's	She's taken the money.
we + have = wehave = we've	We've taken the money.
you + have = youhave = you've	You've taken the money.
they + have = theyhave = they've	They've taken the money.
I + had = Ihad = I'd	I'd like to go.
he + had = hehad = he'd	He'd like to go.
she + had = shehad = she'd	She'd like to go.
we + had = wehad = we'd	We'd like to go.
you + had = youhad = you'd	You'd like to go.
they + had = theyhad = they'd	They'd like to go.
will + not = willnot = won't	It won't work.

SOME EXAMPLES OF TWO WORDS BECOMING ONE (continued)

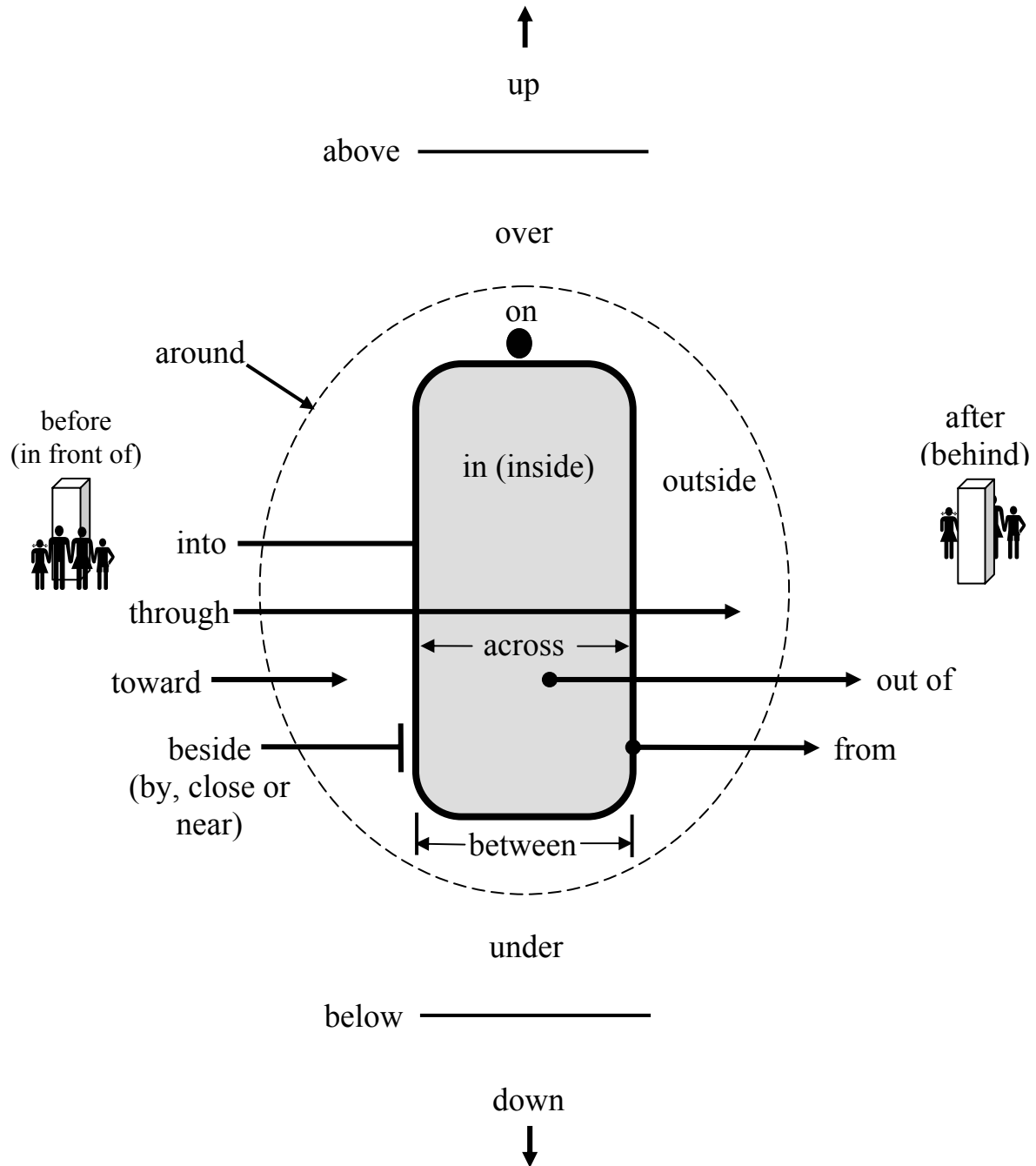
do + not = donot = don't	They don't work.
does + not = doesnot = doesn't	It doesn't work.
did + not = didnot = didn't	She didn't go.
should + not = shouldnot = shouldn't	She shouldn't go.
could + not = couldnot = couldn't	They couldn't go.
would + not = wouldnot = wouldn't	We wouldn't go.
can + not = cannot	You cannot go.
cannot = can't	We can't go.
are + not = arenot = aren't	You aren't starting.
had + not = hadnot = hadn't	They hadn't started.
have + not = havenot = haven't	They haven't started.

AIN'T IS NEVER CORRECT.

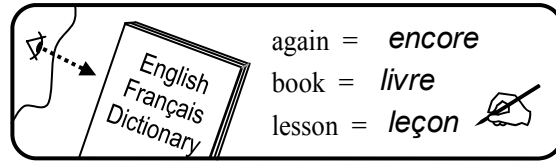
am + not = ain't	I ain't listening.
is + not = ain't	He ain't listening.
are + not = ain't	They ain't listening.

WORDS DESCRIBING LOCATION

14.5



LESSON 7 VOCABULARY



across	inside	to be surprised
ankle	jump	to beg
apostrophe	lame	to belong
around	life	to bite
beggar	near, nearer, nearest	to build
behind	once, at once	to carry
below	outside	to expect
bite	praise	to get
building	recognition	to get up
down	straight, straighter,	to jump
every day, everyday	straightest	to praise
expectation	surprise	to recognize
foot, feet	through	to throw
front	to be	to walk
gate	to be called	toward
hand	to be carried	under
hour	to be lame	

Expressions

One day Peter and John went to the Temple. (3:1)

Every day he was carried to the gate to beg for money. (3:2)

They **looked straight** at him. (3:4)

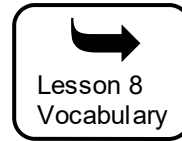
At once the man's feet and ankles became strong. (3:7)

Then he went with them, walking**ing** and jumping**ing** and speaking**ing** with joy. (3:8)

They recognized him as **the** beggar **who** had sat at the gate. (3:10)

They were surprised**ed** and amazed**ed** at what had happened to him. (3:10)

LESSON 8: EXERCISE LESSON



ls8a.mp3

8.1 Lesson Text 3:11-26 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.



ls8ab.mp3

As the man held on to Peter and John (As the man held on to Peter and John) / in Solomon's Porch, as it was called, (in Solomon's Porch, as it was called,) / the people were amazed and ran to them. (the people were amazed and ran to them.)

When Peter saw the people, (When Peter saw the people,) / he said to them, (he said to them,) / Why are you surprised at this, (Why are you surprised at this,) / and why do you stare at us? (and why do you stare at us?)

Do you think that it was by means (Do you think that it was by means) / of our own power or godliness (of our own power or godliness) / that we made this man walk? (that we made this man walk?) / Do you think that it was by means of our own power or godliness that we made this man walk? (Do you think that it was by means of our own power or godliness that we made this man walk?)

The God of our ancestors, (The God of our ancestors,) / has given divine glory (has given divine glory) / to his Servant Jesus. (to his Servant Jesus.) / But you handed him over to the authorities, (But you handed him over to the authorities,) and you rejected him in the Roman judge's presence, (and you rejected him in the Roman judge's presence,) / even after he had decided to set him free. (even after he had decided to set him free.)

He was holy and good, (He was holy and good,) / but you rejected him, (but you rejected him,) / He was holy and good, but you rejected him. (He was holy and good, but you rejected him,) / and instead you asked the Roman judge to do you the favor (and instead you asked the Roman judge to do you the favor) / of turning loose a murderer. (of turning loose a murderer.) / and instead you asked the Roman judge to do you the favor of turning loose a murderer. (and instead you asked the Roman judge to do you the favor of turning loose a murderer.)

You killed the one who leads to life, (You killed the one who leads to life,) / but God raised him from death (but God raised him from death) / and we are witnesses to this. (and we are witnesses to this.) / You killed the one who leads to life, but God raised him from death, and we are witnesses to this. (You killed the one who leads to life, but God raised him from death, and we are witnesses to this.)



ls8b.mp3



ls8bb.mp3

It was the power of his name (It was the power of his name) / that gave strength to this lame man. (that gave strength to this lame man.) / It was the power of his name that gave strength to this lame man. (It was the power of his name that gave strength to this lame man.) / What you see and know (What you see and know) / was done by faith in his name; (was done by faith in his name;) / What you see and know was done by faith in his name; (What you see and know was done by faith in his name;) / it was faith in Jesus that has made him well, (it was faith in Jesus that has made him well,) / as you can all see. (as you can all see.) / it was faith in Jesus that has made him well, as you can all see. (it was faith in Jesus that has made him well, as you can all see.)

And now, my friends, (And now, my friends,) / I know that what you and your leaders did to Jesus (I know that what you and your leaders did to Jesus) / was due to your ignorance. (was due to your ignorance.) / And now, my friends, I know that what you and your leaders did to Jesus was due to your ignorance. (And now, my friends, I know that what you and your leaders did to Jesus was due to your ignorance.)

God announced long ago (God announced long ago) / through all the prophets (through all the prophets) / that his Messiah had to suffer; (that his Messiah had to suffer;) / and he made it come true in this way. (and he made it come true in this way.)

Repent, then, and turn to God, (Repent, then, and turn to God,) / so that he will forgive your sins. (so that he will forgive your sins.) / Repent, then, and turn to God, so that he will forgive your sins. (Repent, then, and turn to God, so that he will forgive your sins.)

If you do, (If you do,) / times of spiritual strength will come from the Lord, (times of spiritual strength will come from the Lord,) / If you do, times of spiritual strength will come from the Lord, (If you do, times of spiritual strength will come from the Lord,) / and he will send Jesus, (and he will send Jesus,) / who is the Messiah he has already chosen for you. (who is the Messiah he has already chosen for you.)



ls8c.mp3



ls8cb.mp3

He must remain in heaven (He must remain in heaven) / until the time comes for all things to be made new, (until the time comes for all things to be made

new,) / as God announced (as God announced) through his holy prophets of long ago. (through his holy prophets of long ago.)

All the prophets who had a message, (All the prophets who had a message,) / announced what has been happening these days. (announced what has been happening these days.)

The promises of God through his prophets (The promises of God through his prophets) / are for you, (are for you,) / The promises of God through his prophets are for you, (The promises of God through his prophets are for you,) / and you share in the covenant (and you share in the covenant) / which God made with your ancestors. (which God made with your ancestors.)

And so God chose his Servant (And so God chose his Servant) / and sent him to you first, (and sent him to you first,) / And so God chose his Servant and sent him to you first, (And so God chose his Servant and sent him to you first,) / to bless you (to bless you) / by making every one of you (by making every one of you) / turn away from your wicked ways. (turn away from your wicked ways.) / to bless you by making every one of you turn away from your wicked ways. (to bless you by making every one of you turn away from your wicked ways.)

(Lesson Text: Today's English Version, Copyright ©1992 by the **ABS** Used by permission. All rights reserved.)

Go to www.ethnicharvest.org/books.html to read the Lesson Text in your language.)

LESSON 8: EXERCISE LESSON

8.2 I will say, "It happened because we thought about the father of John."
You will answer, "It happened because we thought about John's
father."

8.2a It happened because we thought about the father of John.
(It happened because we thought about John's father.) It happened because
we thought about John's father. (It happened because we thought about
John's father.)

8.2b It happened because we thought about the strength of John.
(It happened because we thought about John's strength.) It happened because
we thought about John's strength. (It happened because we thought about
John's strength.)

8.2c It happened because they announced the help of the servant.
(It happened because they announced the servant's help.) It happened
because they announced the servant's help. (It happened because they
announced the servant's help.)

8.2d It happened because they took the car of the leader.
(It happened because they took the leader's car.) It happened because they
took the leader's car. (It happened because they took the leader's car.)

- 8.2e It happened because they came to the house of their ancestor.
(It happened because they came to their ancestor's house.) It happened because they came to their ancestor's house. (It happened because they came to their ancestor's house.)
- 8.2f It happened because he stood on the porch of his father.
(It happened because he stood on his father's porch.) It happened because he stood on his father's porch. (It happened because he stood on his father's porch.)
- 8.2g It happened because she took the license number of the car.
(It happened because she took the car's license number.) It happened because she took the car's license number. (It happened because she took the car's license number.)

8.3 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

- 8.3a TO BLESS (to bless) / She promised to bless it. (She promised to bless it.)
Bless. (Bless.) / Please bless it. (Please bless it.)
blessing (blessing) / He is blessing it. (He is blessing it.)
blessed (blessed) / it is blessed (it is blessed) / it was blessed (it was blessed)
/ it will be blessed (it will be blessed)
- I bless (I bless) / he blesses (he blesses) / she blesses (she blesses) / it blesses (it blesses) / you bless (you bless) / we bless (we bless) / they bless (they bless)

- I blessed (I blessed) / he blessed (he blessed) / she blessed (she blessed) / it blessed (it blessed) / you blessed (you blessed) / we blessed (we blessed) / they blessed (they blessed)
- I will bless (I will bless) / he will bless (he will bless) / she will bless (she will bless) / it will bless (it will bless) / you will bless (you will bless) / we will bless (we will bless) / they will bless (they will bless)

8.3b TO ANNOUNCE (to announce) / She promised not to announce it.
(She promised not to announce it.)

Announce. (Announce.) / Please don't announce it. (Please don't
announce it.)

announcing (announcing) / She is announcing it. (She is announcing it.)

announced (announced) / it is announced (it is announced) / it was

announced (it was announced) / it will be announced (it will be announced)

- I announce (I announce) / he announces (he announces) / she announces (she announces) / it announces (it announces) / you announce (you announce) / we announce (we announce) / they announce (they announce)
- I announced (I announced) / he announced (he announced) / she announced (she announced) / it announced (it announced) / you announced (you announced) / we announced (we announced) / they announced (they announced)
- I will announce (I will announce) / he will announce (he will announce) / she will announce (she will announce) / it will announce (it will announce) / you will announce (you will announce) / we will announce (we will announce) / they will announce (they will announce)



ls8e.mp3



ls8eb.mp3

8.3c TO MURDER (to murder) / She promised not to murder. (She promised not to murder.)

Murder. (Murder.) / Please don't murder. (Please don't murder.)

murdering (murdering) / She is murdering it. (She is murdering it.)

murdered (murdered) / it is murdered (it is murdered) / he was murdered (he was murdered) / he will be murdered (he will be murdered)

- I murder (I murder) / he murders (he murders) / she murders (she murders) / it murders (it murders) / you murder (you murder) / we murder (we murder) / they murder (they murder)
- I murdered (I murdered) / he murdered (he murdered) / she murdered (she murdered) / it murdered (it murdered) / you murdered (you murdered) / we murdered (we murdered) / they murdered (they murdered)
- I will murder (I will murder) / he will murder (he will murder) / she will murder (she will murder) / it will murder (it will murder) / you will murder (you will murder) / we will murder (we will murder) / they will murder (they will murder)

8.4 Repeat each sentence.



ls8f.mp3

8.4a Complete the following sentences with "beside it each afternoon." I will say, "I remain." You will answer, "I remain beside it each afternoon."



ls8fb.mp3

I remain. (I remain beside it each afternoon.) / He remains (He remains beside it each afternoon.) / You remain (You remain beside it each afternoon.) / We remain (We remain beside it each afternoon.) / They remain (They remain beside it each afternoon.)

- Complete the following sentences with "as if there was no noise."

I remained (I remained as if there was no noise.) / She remained (She remained as if there was no noise.) / You remained (You remained as if there was no noise.) / We remained (We remained as if there was no noise.) / They remained (They remained as if there was no noise.)

- Complete the following sentences with "when the leader comes."

I will remain (I will remain when the leader comes.) / He will remain (He will remain when the leader comes.) / You will remain (You will remain when the leader comes.) / We will remain (We will remain when the leader comes.) / They will remain (They will remain when the leader comes.)

- 8.4b Complete the following sentences with "more every day."

I separate (I separate more every day.) / He separates (He separates more every day.) / You separate (You separate more every day.) / We separate (We separate more every day.) / They separate (They separate more every day.)

- Complete the following sentences with "the crowd by means of this."

I separated (I separated the crowd by means of this.) / She separated (She separated the crowd by means of this.) / You separated (You separated the crowd by means of this.) / We separated (We separated the crowd by means of this.) / They separated (They separated the crowd by means of this.)

- Complete the following sentences with "all my books."

I will separate (I will separate all my books.) / He will separate (He will separate all my books.) / You will separate (You will separate all my books.)

/ We will separate (We will separate all my books.) / They will separate
(They will separate all my books.)



ls8g.mp3

8.4c Complete the following sentences with "more every day."

I suffer (I suffer more every day.) / He suffers (He suffers more every
day.) / You suffer (You suffer more every day.) / We suffer (We suffer
more every day.) / They suffer (They suffer more every day.)



ls8gb.mp3

— Complete the following sentences with "to think of their ignorance."

I suffered (I suffered to think of their ignorance.) / She suffered (She
suffered to think of their ignorance.) / You suffered (You suffered to think of
their ignorance.) / We suffered (We suffered to think of their ignorance.) /
They suffered (They suffered to think of their ignorance.)

— Complete the following sentences with "even to do them a favor."

I will suffer (I will suffer even to do them a favor.) / He will suffer (He will
suffer even to do them a favor.) / You will suffer (You will suffer even to do
them a favor.) / We will suffer (We will suffer even to do them a favor.) /
They will suffer (They will suffer even to do them a favor.)

8.5 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).

8.5a **TO THINK** (to think) / She promised to think. (She promised to think.)
Think. (Think.) / Please think. (Please think.)
thinking (thinking) / He is thinking. (He is thinking.)

thought (thought) / it is **thought** (it is **thought**) / it was **thought** (it was **thought**) / it will be **thought** (it will be **thought**)

- I think (I think) / he thinks (he thinks) / she thinks (she thinks) / it thinks (it thinks) / you think (you think) / we think (we think) / they think (they think)
- I **thought** (I **thought**) / he **thought** (he **thought**) / she **thought** (she **thought**) / it **thought** (it **thought**) / you **thought** (you **thought**) / we **thought** (we **thought**) / they **thought** (they **thought**)
- I will think (I will think) / he will think (he will think) / she will think (she will think) / it will think (it will think) / you will think (you will think) / we will think (we will think) / they will think (they will think)



ls8h.mp3

8.5b **TO GO** (to go) / She promised to go. (She promised to go.)

Go. (Go.) / Please go. (Please go.)

going (going) / She is going. (She is going.)

gone (gone) / it is **gone** (it is **gone**) / it was **gone** (it was **gone**) / it will be **gone** (it will be **gone**)

- I go (I go) / he goes (he goes) / she goes (she goes) / it goes (it goes) / you go (you go) / we go (we go) / they go (they go)
- I **went** (I **went**) / he **went** (he **went**) / she **went** (she **went**) / it **went** (it **went**) / you **went** (you **went**) / we **went** (we **went**) / they **went** (they **went**)
- I will go (I will go) / he will go (he will go) / she will go (she will go) / it will go (it will go) / you will go (you will go) / we will go (we will go) / they will go (they will go)



ls8hb.mp3

8.5c **TO RUN** (to run) / She promised to run. (She promised to run.)

Run. (Run.) / Please run. (Please run.)

running (running) / He is running. (He is running.)

run (run) / it is **run** (it is **run**) / it was **run** (it was **run**) / it will be **run** (it will be **run**)

- I run (I run) / he runs (he runs) / she runs (she runs) / it runs (it runs) / you run (you run) / we run (we run) / they run (they run)
- I **ran** (I **ran**) / he **ran** (he **ran**) / she **ran** (she **ran**) / it **ran** (it **ran**) / you **ran** (you **ran**) / we **ran** (we **ran**) / they **ran** (they **ran**)
- I will run (I will run) / he will run (he will run) / she will run (she will run) / it will run (it will run) / you will run (you will run) / we will run (we will run) / they will run (they will run)

8.5d **TO SEND** (to send) / She promised to send them. (She promised to send them.)

Send. (Send.) / Please send some. (Please send some.)

sending (sending) / He is sending them. (He is sending them.)

sent (sent) / he is **sent** (he is **sent**) / she was **sent** (she was **sent**) / it will be **sent** (it will be **sent**)

- I send (I send) / he sends (he sends) / she sends (she sends) / it sends (it sends) / you send (you send) / we send (we send) / they send (they send)
- I **sent** (I **sent**) / he **sent** (he **sent**) / she **sent** (she **sent**) / it **sent** (it **sent**) / you **sent** (you **sent**) / we **sent** (we **sent**) / they **sent** (they **sent**)
- I will send (I will send) / he will send (he will send) / she will send (she will send) / it will send (it will send) / you will send (you will send) / we will send (we will send) / they will send (they will send)

8.5e **TO DRIVE** (to drive) / She promised to drive today. (She promised to drive today.)

Drive. (Drive.) / Please drive your own car. (Please drive your own car.)



ls8i.mp3



ls8ib.mp3

driving (driving) / He is driving his car. (He is driving his car.)

driven (driven) / he is **driven** (he is **driven**) / she was **driven** (she was **driven**) / it will be **driven** (it will be **driven**)

- I drive (I drive) / he drives (he drives) / she drives (she drives) / it drives (it drives) / you drive (you drive) / we drive (we drive) / they drive (they drive)
- I **drove** (I **drove**) / he **drove** (he **drove**) / she **drove** (she **drove**) / it **drove** (it **drove**) / you **drove** (you **drove**) / we **drove** (we **drove**) / they **drove** (they **drove**)
- I will drive (I will drive) / he will drive (he will drive) / she will drive (she will drive) / it will drive (it will drive) / you will drive (you will drive) / we will drive (we will drive) / they will drive (they will drive)

8.5f **TO SING** (to sing) / They promised to sing. (They promised to sing.)

Sing. (Sing.) / Please sing something. (Please sing something.)

singing (singing) / He is singing to them. (He is singing to them.)

sung (sung) / it is **sung** (he is **sung**) / it was **sung** (she was **sung**) / it will be **sung** (it will be **sung**)

- I sing (I sing) / he sings (he sings) / she sings (she sings) / it sings (it sings) / you sing (you sing) / we sing (we sing) / they sing (they sing)
- I **sang** (I **sang**) / he **sang** (he **sang**) / she **sang** (she **sang**) / it **sang** (it **sang**) / you **sang** (you **sang**) / we **sang** (we **sang**) / they **sang** (they **sang**)
- I will sing (I will sing) / he will sing (he will sing) / she will sing (she will sing) / it will sing (it will sing) / you will sing (you will sing) / we will sing (we will sing) / they will sing (they will sing)

8.5g **TO LOSE** (to lose) / She promised not to lose it. (She promised not to lose it.)

Lose. (Lose.) / Please don't lose them. (Please don't lose them.)

losing (losing) / He is losing his money. (He is losing his money.)

lost (lost) / he is **lost** (he is **lost**) / she was **lost** (she was **lost**) / it will be **lost** (it will be **lost**)

- I lose (I lose) / he loses (he loses) / she loses (she loses) / it loses (it loses) / you lose (you lose) / we lose (we lose) / they lose (they lose)
- I **lost** (I **lost**) / he **lost** (he **lost**) / she **lost** (she **lost**) / it **lost** (it **lost**) / you **lost** (you **lost**) / we **lost** (we **lost**) / they **lost** (they **lost**)
- I will lose (I will lose) / he will lose (he will lose) / she will lose (she will lose) / it will lose (it will lose) / you will lose (you will lose) / we will lose (we will lose) / they will lose (they will lose)

8.6 **I will say, "Did you call my brother?"** You will answer, "Why are you staring at me? I called your brother."



ls8j.mp3



ls8jb.mp3

8.6a Did you call my brother?

(Why are you staring at me? I called your brother.) Why are you staring at me? I called your brother. (Why are you staring at me? I called your brother.)

8.6b Did they come back to the city?

(Why are you staring at them? They came back to the city.) Why are you staring at them? They came back to the city. (Why are you staring at them? They came back to the city.)

8.6c Did he bless his brother?

(Why are you staring at him? He blessed his brother.) Why are you staring at him? He blessed his brother. (Why are you staring at him? He blessed his brother.)

8.6d Did they wait before they ran?

(Why are you staring at them? They waited before they ran.) Why are you staring at them? They waited before they ran. (Why are you staring at them? They waited before they ran.)

8.6e Did we include the servant?

(Why are you staring at us? We included the servant.) Why are you staring at us? We included the servant. (Why are you staring at us? We included the servant.)

8.6f Did they come together to reject their leader?

(Why are you staring at them? They came together to reject their leader.) Why are you staring at them? They came together to reject their leader. (Why are you staring at them? They came together to reject their leader.)

8.6g Did you destroy that book?

(Why are you staring at me? I destroyed that book.) Why are you staring at me? I destroyed that book. (Why are you staring at me? I destroyed that book.)

8.7 Say each letter of the alphabet.

A / a B / b C / c D / d E / e F / f G / g
H / h I / i J / j K / k L / l M / m N / n
O / o P / p Q / q R / r S / s T / t U / u
V / v W / w X / x Y / y Z / z



ls8k.mp3

8.8 **I will ask a question.** You will answer the question by saying, "I told you a long time ago that _____."



ls8kb.mp3

8.8a Will we be leaving together?

(I told you a long time ago that we will be leaving together.) I told you a long time ago that we will be leaving together. (I told you a long time ago that we will be leaving together.)

8.8b Will they reject their ignorance?

(I told you a long time ago that they will reject their ignorance.) I told you a long time ago that they will reject their ignorance. (I told you a long time ago that they will reject their ignorance.)

8.8c Will he suffer because of their presence?

(I told you a long time ago that he will suffer because of their presence.) I told you a long time ago that he will suffer because of their presence. (I told you a long time ago that he will suffer because of their presence.)

8.8d Will the whole store be closed?

(I told you a long time ago that the whole store will be closed.) I told you a long time ago that the whole store will be closed. (I told you a long time ago that the whole store will be closed.)

8.8e Will all our children be at the house?

(I told you a long time ago that all our children will be at the house.) I told you a long time ago that all our children will be at the house. (I told you a long time ago that all our children will be at the house.)

8.8f Will he do his own work instead?

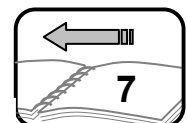
(I told you a long time ago that he will do his own work instead.) I told you a long time ago that he will do his own work instead. (I told you a long time ago that he will do his own work instead.)

8.8g Will it destroy every car in the city?

(I told you a long time ago that it will destroy every car in the city.) I told you a long time ago that it will destroy every car in the city. (I told you a long time ago that it will destroy every car in the city.)

8.8h Will they stare at the fire all day?

(I told you a long time ago that they will stare at the fire all day.) I told you a long time ago that they will stare at the fire all day. (I told you a long time ago that they will stare at the fire all day.)



WORDS THAT DESCRIBE



big	bigger	biggest
black	blacker	blackest
dark	darker	darkest
dull	duller	dullest
early	earlier	earliest
fast	faster	fastest
fat	fatter	fattest
few	fewer	fewest
fine	finer	finest
good	better	best
grand	grander	grandest
hard	harder	hardest
healthy	healthier	healthiest
holy	holier	holiest
hot	hotter	hottest
kind	kinder	kindest
large	larger	largest
late	later	latest

angry	angrier	angriest	angrily
bad	worse	worst	badly
bold	bolder	boldest	boldly
bright	brighter	brightest	brightly
clean	cleaner	cleanest	cleanly
clear	clearer	clearest	clearly
close	closer	closest	closely
cold	colder	coldest	coldly
cool	cooler	coolest	coolly
bright	brighter	brightest	brightly
clean	cleaner	cleanest	cleanly

WORDS THAT DESCRIBE (continued)

clear	clearer	clearest	clearly
close	closer	closest	closely
cold	colder	coldest	coldly
cool	cooler	coolest	coolly
deep	deeper	deepest	deeply
full	fuller	fullest	fully
great	greater	greatest	greatly
happy	happier	happiest	happily
heavy	heavier	heaviest	heavily
high	higher	highest	highly
light	lighter	lightest	lightly
loud	louder	loudest	loudly
mean	meaner	meanest	meanly
neat	neater	neater	neatly
nice	nicer	nicest	nicely
noisy	noisier	noisiest	noisily
quick	quicker	quickest	quickly
sad	sadder	saddest	sadly
sharp	sharper	sharpest	sharply
shy	shyer	shyest	shyly
slow	slower	slowest	slowly
smooth	smoother	smoothest	smoothly
strict	stricter	strictest	strictly
strong	stronger	strongest	strongly
sweet	sweeter	sweetest	sweetly
tight	tighter	tightest	tightly
warm	warmer	warmest	warmly

WORDS THAT DESCRIBE (continued)

attractive	more attractive	most attractive	attractively
beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful	beautifully
clever	more clever	most cleaver	cleverly
cruel	more cruel	most cruel	cruelly
deceitful	more deceitful	most deceitful	deceitfully
famous	more famous	most famous	famously
furious	more furious	most furious	furiously
jealous	more jealous	most jealous	jealously
peaceful	more peaceful	most peaceful	peacefully
personal	more personal	most personal	personally
powerful	more powerful	most powerful	powerfully
public	more public	most public	publicly
religious	more religious	most religious	religiously
responsible	more responsible	most responsible	responsibly
shameful	more shameful	most shameful	shamefully
wicked	more wicked	most wicked	wickedly
worthy	more worthy	most worthy	worthily

NUMBERS

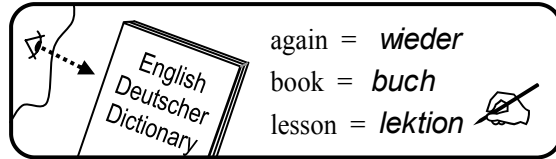
The #	The word	The word used in a sentence.
0	zero	There were no children.
1	one	There was one boy.
2	two	There were two boys.
3	three	There were three children.
4	four	There are four girls.
5	five	There were five men.
6	six	There are six people.
7	seven	There are seven children.
8	eight	There will be eight men.
9	nine	We have nine books.
10	ten	We have 10 books.
11	eleven	We have 11 books.
12	twelve	There were 12 boys.
13	thirteen	We have 13 stores.
14	fourteen	There are 14 girls.
15	fifteen	The city owns 15 buses.
16	sixteen	There are 16 stores.
17	seventeen	We had 17 cards.
18	eighteen	There are 18 children.
19	nineteen	There will be 19 men.
20	twenty	We have 20 books.
21	twenty one	The city owns 21 buses.
22	twenty two	There will be 22 houses.
30	thirty	There are 30 in the group.
33	thirty three	There will be 33 men.
34	thirty four	There were 34 children.
40	forty	There are around 40 boys.
45	forty five	There are 45 stores.
46	forty six	We had 46 cards.
50	fifty	There will be 50 gifts.

NUMBERS (continued)

57	fifty seven	There will be 57 cars.
58	fifty eight	There were 58 children.
60	sixty	There are 60 in the group.
69	sixty nine	We have 69 books.
70	seventy	We had 70 children here.
80	eighty	The city owns 80 buses.
90	ninety	There will be 90 men.
100	one hundred	There are around 100 boys.
101	one hundred (and) one	There will be 101 gifts.
110	one hundred (and) ten	The city owns 110 buses.
120	one hundred (and) twenty	We had 120 girls.
200	two hundred	There will be 200 houses.
230	two hundred (and) thirty	There were 230 people.
235	two hundred (and) thirty five	There are 235 in the group.
1008	one thousand (and) eight	We have 1,008 books.
1026	one thousand (and) twenty six	We had 1,026 people.
1480	one thousand four hundred (and) eighty	There are about 1,480 books.
1487	one thousand four hundred (and) eighty seven	There were 1,487 people.

1st	first	It was the first time they walked.
2nd	second	There will be a second leader.
3rd	third	There was a third murder.
4th	fourth	This will be the fourth time it was destroyed.
5th	fifth	It will be the fifth gift he has given to us.
6th	sixth	That will be the sixth card he has handed over.
7th	seventh	She is the seventh ancestor we found.
8th	eighth	Why was the eighth man here?
9th	ninth	Is the ninth book his?
10th	tenth	They all looked at the tenth word.

LESSON 8 VOCABULARY



by means of	remainder	to lose
driver	run	to murder
even	runner	to obey
faith	separate	to reject
favor	servant	to remain
glory	singer	to run
ignorance	thought	to send
instead	to announce	to separate
leader	to be	to sing
long ago	to be separated	to sing
murder	to bless	to stare
murderer	to destroy	to suffer
obedience	to drive	to think
porch	to include	true
presence	to lead	

"WORDS THAT DESCRIBE" VOCABULARY

angry, angrier, angriest, angrily	black, blacker, blackest
attractive, attractively	bold, bolder, boldest, boldly
bad, worse, worst, badly	bright, brighter, brightest, brightly
beautiful, beautifully	clean, cleaner, cleanest, cleanly
big, bigger, biggest	clear, clearer, clearest, clearly

clever, cleverly
close, closer, closest, closely
cold, colder, coldest, coldly
cool, cooler, coolest, coolly
cruel, cruelly
cultural, culturally
current, currently
dark, darker, darkest
day, daily
deceitful, deceitfully
deep, deeper, deepest, deeply
dull, duller, dullest
early, earlier, earliest
fact, factually
faith, faithfully
famous, famously
fast, faster, fastest
fat, fatter, fattest
few, fewer, fewest
fine, finer, finest
fluent, fluently
frequent, frequently
full, fuller, fullest, fully
furious, furiously
glad, gladly
good, better, best
grand, grander, grandest

great, greater, greatest, greatly
happy, happier, happiest, happily
hard, harder, hardest
healthy, healthier, healthiest
heavy, heavier, heaviest, heavily
high, higher, highest, highly
holy, holier, holiest
hot, hotter, hottest
ignorant, ignorantly
impossible, impossibly
jealous, jealously
kind, kinder, kindest, kindly
large, larger, largest, largely
late, later, latest
light, lighter, lightest, lightly
little, littler, littlest
long, longer, longest
loud, louder, loudest, loudly
mean, meaner, meanest, meanly
near, nearer, nearest
neat, neater, neater, neatly
new, newer, newest
nice, nicer, nicest, nicely
noisy, noisier, noisiest, noisily
old, older, oldest
peaceful, peacefully
personal, personally

plain, plainly
powerful, powerfully
public, publicly
quick, quicker, quickest, quickly
religious, religiously
responsible, responsibly
rich, richer, richest
sad, sadder, saddest, sadly
shameful, shamefully
sharp, sharper, sharpest, sharply
short, shorter, shortest
shy, shyer, shyest, shyly
sick, sicker, sickest
simple, simpler, simplest, simply
sleepy, sleepier, sleepiest
slim, slimmer, slimmest
slow, slower, slowest, slowly
small, smaller, smallest
smart, smarter, smartest

smooth, smoother, smoothest,
smoothly
straight, straighter, straightest
strict, stricter, strictest, strictly
strong, stronger, strongest, strongly
sudden, suddenly
sweet, sweeter, sweetest, sweetly
tall, taller, tallest
thin, thinner, thinnest
tight, tighter, tightest, tightly
tiny, tinier, tiniest
ugly, uglier, ugliest
warm, warmer, warmest, warmly
white, whiter, whitest
wicked, wickedly
worthy, worthily
young, younger, youngest

Expressions

The man **held on to** Peter and John. (3:11)

The man held on to them in the Porch, **as it was called**. (3:11)

Why do you **stare at** us? (3:12)

You **handed him over to** the authorities. (3:13)

You rejected him **even after** the judge decided to set him free. (3:13)

Instead you asked the judge to turn loose a murderer. (3:14)

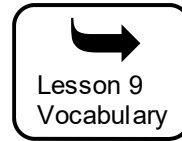
You asked the judge **to do you the favor of** turning loose a murderer. (3:14)

He is well, **as you can see**. (3:16)

He announced **long ago** that this would happen. (3:18)

He must remain **until the time comes** for everything to be changed. (3:21)

LESSON 9: EXERCISE LESSON



ls9a.mp3



ls9ab.mp3

9.1 Lesson Text 4:1-12 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

Peter and John were still speaking to the people (Peter and John were still speaking to the people) / when some priests, (when some priests,) / the officer in charge of the Temple guards, (the officer in charge of the Temple guards,) / and some religious rulers arrived. (and some religious rulers arrived.) / Peter and John were still speaking to the people when some priests, the officer in charge of the Temple guards, and some religious rulers arrived. (Peter and John were still speaking to the people when some priests, the officer in charge of the Temple guards, and some religious rulers arrived.) / Peter and John were still speaking to the people when some priests, the officer in charge of the Temple guards, and some religious rulers arrived. (Peter and John were still speaking to the people when some priests, the officer in charge of the Temple guards, and some religious rulers arrived.)

They were annoyed (They were annoyed) / because the two apostles were teaching the people (because the two apostles were teaching the people) / that Jesus had risen from death, (that Jesus had risen from death,) / which proved that the dead will rise to life. (which proved that the dead will rise to life.) / They were annoyed because the two apostles were teaching the people that Jesus had risen from death, which proved that the dead will rise to life. (They were annoyed because the two apostles were teaching the people that Jesus had risen from death, which proved that the dead will rise to life.) / They were annoyed because the two apostles were teaching the people that Jesus had risen from death, which proved that the dead will rise to life. (They were annoyed because the two apostles

were teaching the people that Jesus had risen from death, which proved that the dead will rise to life.)

So they arrested them (So they arrested them) / and put them in jail until the next day, (and put them in jail until the next day,) / since it was already late. (since it was already late.) / So they arrested them and put them in jail until the next day, since it was already late. (So they arrested them and put them in jail until the next day, since it was already late.) / So they arrested them and put them in jail until the next day, since it was already late. (So they arrested them and put them in jail until the next day, since it was already late.)

But many who heard the message believed; (But many who heard the message believed;) / and the number grew to about five thousand. (and the number grew to about five thousand.) / But many who heard the message believed; and the number grew to about five thousand. (But many who heard the message believed; and the number grew to about five thousand.) / But many who heard the message believed; and the number grew to about five thousand. (But many who heard the message believed; and the number grew to about five thousand.)

The next day the Jewish leaders, (The next day the Jewish leaders,) / the elders, and the teachers of the law (the elders, and the teachers of the law) / gathered in Jerusalem. (gathered in Jerusalem.) / The next day the Jewish leaders, the elders, and the teachers of the law gathered in Jerusalem. (The next day the Jewish leaders, the elders, and the teachers of the law gathered in Jerusalem.) / The next day the Jewish leaders, the elders, and the teachers of the law gathered in Jerusalem. (The next day the Jewish leaders, the elders, and the teachers of the law gathered in Jerusalem.)



ls9b.mp3



ls9bb.mp3

They met with the High Priest (They met with the High Priest) / and the others who belonged to the High Priest's family. (and the others who belonged to the High Priest's family.) / They met with the High Priest and the others who belonged to the High Priest's family. (They met with the High Priest and the others who belonged to the High Priest's family.) / They met with the High Priest and the others who belonged to the High Priest's family. (They met with the High Priest and the others who belonged to the High Priest's family.)

They made the apostles stand before them (They made the apostles stand before them) / and asked them, (and asked them,) / How did you do this? (How did you do this?) / They made the apostles stand before them and asked them, How did you do this? (They made the apostles stand before them and asked them, How did you do this?) / They made the apostles stand before them and asked them, How did you do this? (They made the apostles stand before them and asked them, How did you do this?) / What power do you have (What power do you have) / or whose name did you use? (or whose name did you use?) / What power do you have or whose name did you use? (What power do you have or whose name did you use?) / What power do you have or whose name did you use? (What power do you have or whose name did you use?)

Peter, full of the Holy Spirit, answered them, (Peter, full of the Holy Spirit, answered them,) / Leaders of the people and elders: (Leaders of the people and elders:) / if we are being questioned today (if we are being questioned today) / about the good deed done to the lame man (about the good deed done to the lame man) / and how he was healed, (and how he was healed,) / Peter, full of the Holy Spirit, answered them, Leaders of the people and elders: if we are being questioned today about the good deed done to the lame man and how he was

healed, (Peter, full of the Holy Spirit, answered them, Leaders of the people and elders: if we are being questioned today about the good deed done to the lame man and how he was healed,) / Peter, full of the Holy Spirit, answered them, Leaders of the people and elders: if we are being questioned today about the good deed done to the lame man and how he was healed, (Peter, full of the Holy Spirit, answered them, Leaders of the people and elders: if we are being questioned today about the good deed done to the lame man and how he was healed,)

then you should all know, (then you should all know,) / and all the people of Israel should know, (and all the people of Israel should know,) / that this man stands here before you completely well (that this man stands here before you completely well) / then you should all know, and all the people of Israel should know, that this man stands here before you completely well (then you should all know, and all the people of Israel should know, that this man stands here before you completely well) / then you should all know, and all the people of Israel should know, that this man stands here before you completely well (then you should all know, and all the people of Israel should know, that this man stands here before you completely well) / through the power of the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth (through the power of the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth) / who you crucified and whom God raised from death. (who you crucified and whom God raised from death.) / through the power of the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth who you crucified and whom God raised from death. (through the power of the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth who you crucified and whom God raised from death.) / through the power of the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth who you crucified and whom God raised from death. (through the power of the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth who you crucified and whom God raised from death.)



ls9c.mp3



ls9cb.mp3

Salvation is to be found through him alone; (Salvation is to be found through him alone;) / in all the world there is no one else (in all the world there is no one else) / whom God has given who can save us. (whom God has given who can save us.) / Salvation is to be found through him alone; in all the world there is no one else whom God has given who can save us. (Salvation is to be found through him alone; in all the world there is no one else whom God has given who can save us.) / Salvation is to be found through him alone; in all the world there is no one else whom God has given who can save us. (Salvation is to be found through him alone; in all the world there is no one else whom God has given who can save us.)

LESSON 9: EXERCISE LESSON

9.2 Repeat each sentence.

9.2a Complete the following sentences with "with him."

I **am** annoyed (I **am** annoyed with him.) / He **is** annoyed (He **is** annoyed with him.) / You **are** annoyed (You **are** annoyed with him.) / We **are** annoyed (We **are** annoyed with him.) / They **are** annoyed (They **are** annoyed with him.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to be questioned about it."

I **was** annoyed (I **was** annoyed to be questioned about it.) / She **was** annoyed (She **was** annoyed to be questioned about it.) / You **were** annoyed (You **were** annoyed to be questioned about it.) / We **were** annoyed (We **were** annoyed to be questioned about it.) / They **were** annoyed (They **were** annoyed to be questioned about it.)

— Complete the following sentences with "if they are arrested."

I will be annoyed (I will be annoyed if they are arrested.) / He will be annoyed (He will be annoyed if they are arrested.) / You will be annoyed (You will be annoyed if they are arrested.) / We will be annoyed (We will be annoyed if they are arrested.) / They will be annoyed (They will be annoyed if they are arrested.)

9.2b Complete the following sentences with "want to make them sick."

I don't (I don't want to make them sick.) / He doesn't (He doesn't want to make them sick.) / You don't (You don't want to make them sick.) / We don't (We don't want to make them sick.) / They don't (They don't want to make them sick.)

— Complete the following sentences with "want to make them famous."

I didn't (I didn't want to make them famous.) / She didn't (She didn't want to make them famous.) / You didn't (You didn't want to make them famous.) / We didn't (We didn't want to make them famous.) / They didn't (They didn't want to make them famous.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to make the children well."

I will want (I will want to make the children well.) / She will want (She will want to make the children well.) / You will want (You will want to make the children well.) / We will want (We will want to make the children well.) / They will want (They will want to make the children well.)

9.2c Complete the following sentences with "alone each morning."

I arrive (I arrive alone each morning.) / He arrives (He arrives alone each morning.) / You arrive (You arrive alone each morning.) / We arrive (We arrive alone each morning.) / They arrive (They arrive alone each morning.)

— Complete the following sentences with "before it was complete."

I arrived (I arrived before it was complete.) / She arrived (She arrived before it was complete.) / You arrived (You arrived before it was complete.) / We arrived (We arrived before it was complete.) / They arrived (They arrived before it was complete.)

— Complete the following sentences with "tomorrow morning."

I will arrive (I will arrive tomorrow morning.) / She will arrive (She will arrive tomorrow morning.) / You will arrive (You will arrive tomorrow morning.) / We will arrive (We will arrive tomorrow morning.) / They will arrive (They will arrive tomorrow morning.)



ls9e.mp3

9.2d Complete the following sentences with "of the prisoner."



ls9eb.mp3

I **am** in charge (I **am** in charge of the prisoner.) / He **is** in charge (He **is** in charge of the prisoner.) / You **are** in charge (You **are** in charge of the prisoner.) / We **are** in charge (We **are** in charge of the prisoner.) / They **are** in charge (They **are** in charge of the prisoner.)

— Complete the following sentences with "after they left."

I **was** in charge (I **was** in charge after they left.) / She **was** in charge (She **was** in charge after they left.) / You **were** in charge (You **were** in charge after they left.) / We **were** in charge (We **were** in charge after they left.) / They **were** in charge (They **were** in charge after they left.)

— Complete the following sentences with "later today."

I will be in charge (I will be in charge later today.) / He will be in charge (He will be in charge later today.) / You will be in charge (You will be in charge later today.) / We will be in charge (We will be in charge later today.) / They will be in charge (They will be in charge later today.)

9.3 **Answer each sentence.** I will say, "Some who heard them did not believe."
You will answer, "Some who heard them did not believe until the next day."

9.3a Some who heard them did not believe.
(Some who heard them did not believe until the next day.) Some who heard them did not believe until the next day. (Some who heard them did not believe until the next day.)

9.3b Some who talked to them did not wait.
(Some who talked to them did not wait until the next day.) Some who talked to them did not wait until the next day. (Some who talked to them did not wait until the next day.)

9.3c Some who came yesterday did not pay.
(Some who came yesterday did not pay until the next day.) Some who came yesterday did not pay until the next day. (Some who came yesterday did not pay until the next day.)

9.3d Some who listen to the guards do not obey.

(Some who listen to the guards do not obey until the next day.) Some who listen to the guards do not obey until the next day. (Some who listen to the guards do not obey until the next day.)

9.3e Some who arrive late cannot listen.

(Some who arrive late cannot listen until the next day.) Some who arrive late cannot listen until the next day. (Some who arrive late cannot listen until the next day.)

9.3f Some who guard their money will not spend it.

(Some who guard their money will not spend it until the next day.) Some who guard their money will not spend it until the next day. (Some who guard their money will not spend it until the next day.)

9.4 **Answer each sentence.** I will say, "Some who gathered here did not come in." You will answer, "Some who gathered here did not come in since it was late."



ls9f.mp3



ls9fb.mp3

9.4a Some who gathered here did not come in.

(Some who gathered here did not come in since it was late.) Some who gathered here did not come in since it was late. (Some who gathered here did not come in since it was late.)

9.4b Some who met them did not see the family.

(Some who met them did not see the family since it was late.) Some who met them did not see the family since it was late. (Some who met them did not see the family since it was late.)

9.4c Some who helped us did not question them.

(Some who helped us did not question them since it was late.) Some who helped us did not question them since it was late. (Some who helped us did not question them since it was late.)

9.4d Some who arrived first did not like it.

(Some who arrived first did not like it since it was late.) Some who arrived first did not like it since it was late. (Some who arrived first did not like it since it was late.)

9.4e Some who were questioned did not answer.

(Some who were questioned did not answer since it was late.) Some who were questioned did not answer since it was late. (Some who were questioned did not answer since it was late.)

9.5 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

9.5a TO SAVE (to save) / He promised to save some. (He promised to save some.)

Save. (Save.) / Please save it. (Please save it.)

saving (saving) / He is saving some. (He is saving some.)

saved (saved) / it is saved (it is saved) / it was saved (it was saved) / it will be saved (it will be saved)

- I save (I save) / he saves (he saves) / she saves (she saves) / it saves (it saves) / you save (you save) / we save (we save) / they save (they save)
- I saved (I saved) / he saved (he saved) / she saved (she saved) / it saved (it saved) / you saved (you saved) / we saved (we saved) / they saved (they saved)
- I will save (I will save) / he will save (he will save) / she will save (she will save) / it will save (it will save) / you will save (you will save) / we will save (we will save) / they will save (they will save)



9.5b TO QUESTION (to question) / He wants to question them. (He wants to question them.)

ls9g.mp3

Question. (Question.) / Please question her. (Please question her.)



ls9gb.mp3

questioning (questioning) / He is questioning them. (He is questioning them.)

questioned (questioned) / it is questioned (it is questioned) / it was questioned (it was questioned) / it will be questioned (it will be questioned)

- I question (I question) / he questions (he questions) / she questions (she questions) / it questions (it questions) / you question (you question) / we question (we question) / they question (they question)
- I questioned (I questioned) / he questioned (he questioned) / she questioned (she questioned) / it questioned (it questioned) / you questioned (you questioned) / we questioned (we questioned) / they questioned (they questioned)

- I will question (I will question) / he will question (he will question) / she will question (she will question) / it will question (it will question) / you will question (you will question) / we will question (we will question) / they will question (they will question)

- 9.5c **TO GUARD** (to guard) / He promised to guard it. (He promised to guard it.)
Guard. (Guard.) / Please guard it. (Please guard it.)
guarding (guarding) / He is guarding something. (He is guarding something.)
guarded (guarded) / it is guarded (it is guarded) / it was guarded (it was guarded) / it will be guarded (it will be guarded)
- I guard (I guard) / he guards (he guards) / she guards (she guards) / it guards (it guards) / you guard (you guard) / we guard (we guard) / they guard (they guard)
 - I guarded (I guarded) / he guarded (he guarded) / she guarded (she guarded) / it guarded (it guarded) / you guarded (you guarded) / we guarded (we guarded) / they guarded (they guarded)
 - I will guard (I will guard) / he will guard (he will guard) / she will guard (she will guard) / it will guard (it will guard) / you will guard (you will guard) / we will guard (we will guard) / they will guard (they will guard)

9.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).



ls9h.mp3

- 9.6a **TO PUT** (to put) / He promised to put it there. (He promised to put it there.)



ls9hb.mp3

Put. (Put.) / Please put it there. (Please put it there.)
putting (putting) / He is putting it away. (He is putting it away.)

put (put) / it is **put** (it is **put**) / it was **put** (it was **put**) / it will be **put** (it will be **put**)

- I put (I put) / he puts (he puts) / she puts (she puts) / it puts (it puts) / you put (you put) / we put (we put) / they put (they put)
- I **put** (I **put**) / he **put** (he **put**) / she **put** (she **put**) / it **put** (it **put**) / you **put** (you **put**) / we **put** (we **put**) / they **put** (they **put**)
- I will put (I will put) / he will put (he will put) / she will put (she will put) / it will put (it will put) / you will put (you will put) / we will put (we will put) / they will put (they will put)

9.6b **TO KEEP** (to keep) / He promised to keep it. (He promised to keep it.)

Keep. (Keep.) / Please keep it. (Please keep it.)

keeping (keeping) / He is keeping it. (He is keeping it.)

kept (kept) / it is **kept** (it is **kept**) / it was **kept** (it was **kept**) / it will be **kept** (it will be **kept**)

- I keep (I keep) / he keeps (he keeps) / she keeps (she keeps) / it keeps (it keeps) / you keep (you keep) / we keep (we keep) / they keep (they keep)
- I **kept** (I **kept**) / he **kept** (he **kept**) / she **kept** (she **kept**) / it **kept** (it **kept**) / you **kept** (you **kept**) / we **kept** (we **kept**) / they **kept** (they **kept**)
- I will keep (I will keep) / he will keep (he will keep) / she will keep (she will keep) / it will keep (it will keep) / you will keep (you will keep) / we will keep (we will keep) / they will keep (they will keep)

9.6c **TO RISE** (to rise) / He promised to rise first. (He promised to rise first.)

Rise. (Rise.) / Please rise. (Please rise.)

rising (rising) / He is rising to talk. (He is rising to talk.)

risen (risen) / it is risen (it is risen) / it was risen (it was risen) / it will be risen (it will be risen)

- I rise (I rise) / he rises (he rises) / she rises (she rises) / it rises (it rises) / you rise (you rise) / we rise (we rise) / they rise (they rise)
- I **rose (I rose)** / he **rose (he rose)** / she **rose (she rose)** / it **rose (it rose)** / you **rose (you rose)** / we **rose (we rose)** / they **rose (they rose)**
- I will rise (I will rise) / he will rise (he will rise) / she will rise (she will rise) / it will rise (it will rise) / you will rise (you will rise) / we will rise (we will rise) / they will rise (they will rise)



ls9i.mp3

9.6d **TO GROW** (to grow) / He promised to grow some. (He promised to grow some.)

Grow. (Grow.) / Please grow. (Please grow.)

growing (growing) / It is growing today. (It is growing today.)

grown (grown) / it is grown (it is grown) / it was grown (it was grown) / it will be grown (it will be grown)

- I grow (I grow) / he grows (he grows) / she grows (she grows) / it grows (it grows) / you grow (you grow) / we grow (we grow) / they grow (they grow)
- I **grew (I grew)** / he **grew (he grew)** / she **grew (she grew)** / it **grew (it grew)** / you **grew (you grew)** / we **grew (we grew)** / they **grew (they grew)**
- I will grow (I will grow) / he will grow (he will grow) / she will grow (she will grow) / it will grow (it will grow) / you will grow (you will grow) / we will grow (we will grow) / they will grow (they will grow)



ls9ib.mp3

9.7 Repeat each letter of the alphabet.

A / a B / b C / c D / d E / e F / f G / g
H / h I / i J / j K / k L / l M / m N / n
O / o P / p Q / q R / r S / s T / t U / u
V / v W / w X / x Y / y Z / z

9.8 **Answer by saying, "They made ." or "They will make ."** I will say, "He stood before them." You will answer, "They made him stand before them." I will say, "She will walk alone." You will answer, "They will make her walk alone."

9.8a He stood before them.

(They made him stand before them.) They made him stand before them.

(They made him stand before them.)

9.8b She will walk alone.

(They will make her walk alone.) They will make her walk alone. (They will make her walk alone.)

9.8c He helps others.

(They made him help others.) They made him help others. (They made him help others.)

9.8d She asked about her family.

(They made her ask about her family.) They made her ask about her family.

(They made her ask about her family.)

9.8e It looked completely whole.

(They made it look completely whole.) They made it look completely whole.

(They made it look completely whole.)

9.8f We will belong to the group.

(They will make us belong to the group.) They will make us belong to the group. (They will make us belong to the group.)

9.8g We appeared together.

(They made us appear together.) They made us appear together. (They made us appear together.)

9.8h We believed it was true.

(They made us believe it was true.) They made us believe it was true. (They made us believe it was true.)

9.8i He will leave since he is annoyed.

(They will make him leave since he is annoyed.) They will make him leave since he is annoyed. (They will make him leave since he is annoyed.)

9.8j We will grow through our work.

(They will make us grow through our work.) They will make us grow through our work. (They will make us grow through our work.)

9.9 **I will ask, "Did you put them in jail?"** You will answer, "It was already late, so I put them in jail." I will ask, "Did they guard it together?" You will answer, "It was already late, so they guarded it together"

9.9a Did you put them in jail?

(It was already late, so I put them in jail.) It was already late, so I put them in jail. (It was already late, so I put them in jail.)

9.9b Did they guard it together?

(It was already late, so they guarded it together.) It was already late, so they guarded it together. (It was already late, so they guarded it together.)

9.9c Did she help them work?

(It was already late, so she helped them work.) It was already late, so she helped them work. (It was already late, so she helped them work.)

9.9d Did he find everything himself?

(It was already late, so he found everything himself.) It was already late, so he found everything himself. (It was already late, so he found everything himself.)

9.9e Did she tell them to walk?

(It was already late, so she told them to walk.) It was already late, so she told them to walk. (It was already late, so she told them to walk.)

9.9f Did you come together?

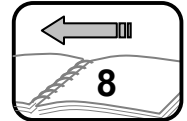
(It was already late, so we came together.) It was already late, so we came together. (It was already late, so we came together.)

9.9g Did she wonder about today?

(It was already late, so she wondered about today.) It was already late, so she wondered about today. (It was already late, so she wondered about today.)

9.9h Did he hold the child's hand?

(It was already late, so he held the child's hand.) It was already late, so he held the child's hand. (It was already late, so he held the child's hand.)



"WILL" AND "MAY" OR "MIGHT"

11.3

"Will" indicates certainty.

I will go tomorrow.
He will talk about the emergency.
It will be a large amount of money.
They will do all of their work.

11.4

"May" or "Might" indicates doubt.

Stronger Possibility	Weaker Possibility
I may go tomorrow.	I might go tomorrow.
He may talk about the emergency.	He might talk about the emergency.
It may be a large amount of money.	It might be a large amount of money.
They may do all of their work.	They might do all of their work.

I **will** go tomorrow. (It is certain.)

I **may** go tomorrow. (I will decide later.)

I **might** go tomorrow. (But I probably will not.)

HELPING VERBS

Helping verbs that do not change form.

can	I can go.	I am able to go.
could	I could go.	I have permission to go.
may	I may go.	It is possible that I will go.
might	I might go.	I could go but probably will not.
must	I must go.	I will go because I do not have a choice.
shall	I shall go.	It is inevitable that I will go.
should	I should go.	I should go but don't want to.
will	I will go.	It is certain that I will go.
would	I would go.	I would go if I could, but I cannot

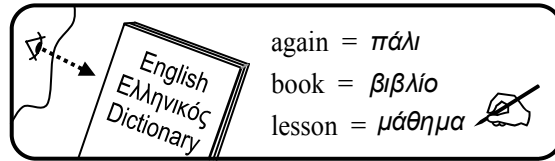
These helping verbs do not change form with person or time. For example: I **might** go. He **might** go. You **might** go. We **might** go. They **might** go.

Helping verbs that change form.

Verb	Regular forms	Negative forms
TO DO	do, does, did	don't, doesn't, didn't
TO HAVE	have, has, had	haven't, hasn't, hadn't
TO BE	be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been	isn't, aren't, wasn't, weren't

These helping verbs change form with person and time. For example: I **do** go. He **does** go. You **do** go. I **did** go. We **did** go. They **did** go. I **have** gone. He **has** gone. We **have** gone. I **had** gone. She **had** gone. We **had** gone.

LESSON 9 VOCABULARY



annoyance	law	to be arrested
arrest	might	to be healed
arrival	negative	to be in charge
belongings	next	to be questioned
certain, certainty	officer	to believe
charge	possible, possibility	to change
choice	priest	to grow
complete, completely	probable, probably,	to guard
dead	probability	to heal
deed	shall	to indicate
family	since	to rise
form	teacher	today
growth	to annoy	weak, weaker,
guard	to arrest	weakest
inevitable	to be	would
jail	to be annoyed	

Expressions

They were still speaking to the people **when** the guards arrived. (4:1)

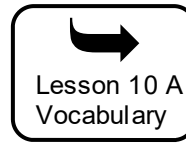
They were annoyed **because** the two men were teaching. (4:2)

They arrested them and put them in jail **until** the next day, **since** it was already late. (4:3)

But many **who** heard the message believed. (4:4)

They **made** the men stand before them and asked them, "How did you do this?" (4:5)

LESSON 10-A: PRONUNCIATION



ls10a.mp3



ls10ab.mp3

10.1-A Lesson Text 4:13-35 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

The members of the Council were amazed (The members of the Council were amazed) / to see how bold Peter and John were (to see how bold Peter and John were) / and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education. (and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education.) / The members of the Council were amazed to see how bold Peter and John were and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education. (The members of the Council were amazed to see how bold Peter and John were and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education.) / The members of the Council were amazed to see how bold Peter and John were and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education. (The members of the Council were amazed to see how bold Peter and John were and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education.) / The members of the Council were amazed to see how bold Peter and John were and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education. (The members of the Council were amazed to see how bold Peter and John were and to learn that they were ordinary men of no education.)

They realized then that they had been companions of Jesus. (They realized then that they had been companions of Jesus.) / They realized then that they had been companions of Jesus. (They realized then that they had been companions of Jesus.) / But there was nothing that they could say, (But there was nothing that they could say,) / because they saw the man who had been healed (because they saw the man who had been healed) / standing there with Peter and John. (standing there with Peter and John.) / But there was nothing that they could say, because they saw the man who had been healed standing there with Peter and John. (But there was nothing that they could say, because they saw the man who had been healed standing there with Peter and John.) / But there was nothing that they could say, because they saw the man who had been healed standing there with Peter and John.

Peter and John. (But there was nothing that they could say, because they saw the man who had been healed standing there with Peter and John.)

So they told them to leave the Council room, (So they told them to leave the Council room,) / and then they started discussing among themselves, (and then they started discussing among themselves,) / What shall we do with these men? they asked. (What shall we do with these men? they asked.) / So they told them to leave the Council room, and then they started discussing among themselves, What shall we do with these men? they asked. (So they told them to leave the Council room, and then they started discussing among themselves, What shall we do with these men? they asked.) / So they told them to leave the Council room, and then they started discussing among themselves, What shall we do with these men? they asked. (So they told them to leave the Council room, and then they started discussing among themselves, What shall we do with these men? they asked.)

Everyone in Jerusalem knows (Everyone in Jerusalem knows) / that this extraordinary miracle has been performed by them, (that this extraordinary miracle has been performed by them,) / and we cannot deny it. (and we cannot deny it.) / Everyone in Jerusalem knows that this extraordinary miracle has been performed by them, and we cannot deny it. (Everyone in Jerusalem knows that this extraordinary miracle has been performed by them, and we cannot deny it.) / Everyone in Jerusalem knows that this extraordinary miracle has been performed by them, and we cannot deny it. (Everyone in Jerusalem knows that this extraordinary miracle has been performed by them, and we cannot deny it.)



ls10b.mp3



ls10bb.mp3

But to keep this matter (But to keep this matter) / from spreading any further among the people, (from spreading any further among the people,) / But to keep this matter from spreading any further among the people, (But to keep this matter from spreading any further among the people,) / But to keep this matter from spreading any further among the people, (But to keep this matter from spreading any further among the people,) / let us warn these men (let us warn these men) / never again to speak (never again to speak) / to anyone in the name of Jesus. (to anyone in the name of Jesus.) / let us warn these men never again to speak to anyone in the name of Jesus. (let us warn these men never again to speak to anyone in the name of Jesus.) / let us warn these men never again to speak to anyone in the name of Jesus. (let us warn these men never again to speak to anyone in the name of Jesus.)

So they called them back in (So they called them back in) / and told them that under no condition (and told them that under no condition) / were they to speak or to teach in the name of Jesus. (were they to speak or to teach in the name of Jesus.) / So they called them back in and told them that under no condition were they to speak or to teach in the name of Jesus. (So they called them back in and told them that under no condition were they to speak or to teach in the name of Jesus.) / So they called them back in and told them that under no condition were they to speak or to teach in the name of Jesus. (So they called them back in and told them that under no condition were they to speak or to teach in the name of Jesus.)

But Peter and John answered them, (But Peter and John answered them,) / You yourselves judge (You yourselves judge) / which is right in God's sight, (which is right in God's sight,) / to obey you or to obey



ls10c.mp3



ls10cb.mp3

God. (to obey you or to obey God.) / But Peter and John answered them, You yourselves judge which is right in God's sight, to obey you or to obey God. (But Peter and John answered them, You yourselves judge which is right in God's sight, to obey you or to obey God.) / But Peter and John answered them, You yourselves judge which is right in God's sight, to obey you or to obey God. (But Peter and John answered them, You yourselves judge which is right in God's sight, to obey you or to obey God.)

For we cannot stop speaking (For we cannot stop speaking) / of what we ourselves have seen and heard. (of what we ourselves have seen and heard.) / For we cannot stop speaking of what we ourselves have seen and heard. (For we cannot stop speaking of what we ourselves have seen and heard.) / For we cannot stop speaking of what we ourselves have seen and heard. (For we cannot stop speaking of what we ourselves have seen and heard.)

So the Council warned them (So the Council warned them) / even more strongly (even more strongly) / and then set them free. (and then set them free.) / So the Council warned them even more strongly and then set them free. (So the Council warned them even more strongly and then set them free.) / So the Council warned them even more strongly and then set them free. (So the Council warned them even more strongly and then set them free.)

They saw that it was impossible to punish them, (They saw that it was impossible to punish them,) / because the people were all praising God (because the people were all praising God) / for what had happened. (for what had happened.) / They saw that it was impossible to punish them, because the people were all praising God for what had happened. (They saw that it was impossible to

punish them, because the people were all praising God for what had happened.) / They saw that it was impossible to punish them, because the people were all praising God for what had happened. (They saw that it was impossible to punish them, because the people were all praising God for what had happened.)

The man (The man) / on whom this miracle of healing had been performed (on whom this miracle of healing had been performed) / was over forty years old. (was over forty years old.) / The man on whom this miracle of healing had been performed was over forty years old. (The man on whom this miracle of healing had been performed was over forty years old.) / The man on whom this miracle of healing had been performed was over forty years old. (The man on whom this miracle of healing had been performed was over forty years old.)

As soon as Peter and John were set free, (As soon as Peter and John were set free,) / they returned to their group (they returned to their group) / and told them what the chief priests and the elders had said. (and told them what the chief priests and the elders had said.) / As soon as Peter and John were set free, they returned to their group and told them what the chief priests and the elders had said. (As soon as Peter and John were set free, they returned to their group and told them what the chief priests and the elders had said.) / As soon as Peter and John were set free, they returned to their group and told them what the chief priests and the elders had said. (As soon as Peter and John were set free, they returned to their group and told them what the chief priests and the elders had said.)



ls10d.mp3



ls10db.mp3

When the believers heard it, (When the believers heard it,) / they all joined together in prayer to God: (they all joined together in prayer to God:) / When the

believers heard it, they all joined together in prayer to God: (When the believers heard it, they all joined together in prayer to God:) / When the believers heard it, they all joined together in prayer to God: (When the believers heard it, they all joined together in prayer to God:)

Master and Creator of heaven, earth, and sea, (Master and Creator of heaven, earth, and sea,) / and all that is in them. (and all that is in them.) / Master and Creator of heaven, earth, and sea, and all that is in them. (Master and Creator of heaven, earth, and sea, and all that is in them.) / Master and Creator of heaven, earth, and sea, and all that is in them. (Master and Creator of heaven, earth, and sea, and all that is in them.)

For indeed (For indeed) / the King and the Roman judge (the King and the Roman judge) / met together in this city (met together in this city) with the people against Jesus, (with the people against Jesus,) / For indeed the King and the Roman judge met together in this city with the people against Jesus, (For indeed the King and the Roman judge met together in this city with the people against Jesus,) / For indeed the King and the Roman judge met together in this city with the people against Jesus, (For indeed the King and the Roman judge met together in this city with the people against Jesus,) your holy Servant, (your holy Servant,) / whom you made Messiah. (whom you made Messiah.) your holy Servant, whom you made Messiah. (your holy Servant, whom you made Messiah.) / your holy Servant, whom you made Messiah. (your holy Servant, whom you made Messiah.)



ls10e.mp3



ls10eb.mp3

They gathered to do everything (They gathered to do everything) / that you by your power and will (that you by your power and will) had already decided would happen. (had already decided would happen.) / They gathered to do

everything that you by your power and will had already decided would happen.
(They gathered to do everything that you by your power and will had already
decided would happen.) / They gathered to do everything that you by your
power and will had already decided would happen. (They gathered to do
everything that you by your power and will had already decided would happen.)

And now, Lord, (And now, Lord,) / take notice of the threats they have made,
(take notice of the threats they have made,) / and allow us, your servants, (and
allow us, your servants,) / to speak your message with all boldness. (to speak
your message with all boldness.) / And now, Lord, take notice of the threats they
have made, and allow us, your servants, to speak your message with all boldness.
(And now, Lord, take notice of the threats they have made, and allow us, your
servants, to speak your message with all boldness.) / And now, Lord, take notice
of the threats they have made, and allow us, your servants, to speak your message
with all boldness. (And now, Lord, take notice of the threats they have made, and
allow us, your servants, to speak your message with all boldness.)

Reach out your hand to heal, (Reach out your hand to heal,) / and
grant that wonders and miracles (and grant that wonders and
miracles) / may be performed (may be performed) / through the name
of your holy Servant Jesus. (through the name of your holy Servant
Jesus.) / Reach out your hand to heal, and grant that wonders and miracles may
be performed through the name of your holy Servant Jesus. (Reach out your hand
to heal, and grant that wonders and miracles may be performed through the name
of your holy Servant Jesus.) / Reach out your hand to heal, and grant that
wonders and miracles may be performed through the name of your holy Servant



ls10f.mp3



ls10fb.mp3

Jesus. (Reach out your hand to heal, and grant that wonders and miracles may be performed through the name of your holy Servant Jesus.)

When they finished praying, (When they finished praying,) / the place where they were meeting was shaken. (the place where they were meeting was shaken.) / When they finished praying, the place where they were meeting was shaken. (When they finished praying, the place where they were meeting was shaken.) / When they finished praying, the place where they were meeting was shaken. (When they finished praying, the place where they were meeting was shaken.)

They were all filled with the Holy Spirit (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit) / and began to proclaim God's message with boldness. (and began to proclaim God's message with boldness.) / They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to proclaim God's message with boldness. (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to proclaim God's message with boldness.) / They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to proclaim God's message with boldness. (They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to proclaim God's message with boldness.)

The group of believers was one in mind and heart. (The group of believers was one in mind and heart.) / The group of believers was one in mind and heart. (The group of believers was one in mind and heart.) / None of them said (None of them said) / that any of their belongings were their own, (that any of their belongings were their own,) / but they all shared with one another (but they all shared with one another) / everything they had. (everything they had.) / None of them said that any of their belongings were their own, but they all shared with one another everything they had. (None of them said that any of their belongings

were their own, but they all shared with one another everything they had.) / None of them said that any of their belongings were their own, but they all shared with one another everything they had. (None of them said that any of their belongings were their own, but they all shared with one another everything they had.)



ls10g.mp3

With great power (With great power) / the apostles gave witness to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, (the apostles gave witness to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus,) / and God poured rich blessings on them all. (and God poured rich blessings on them all.) / With great power the apostles gave witness to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and God poured rich blessings on them all. (With great power the apostles gave witness to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and God poured rich blessings on them all.) / With great power the apostles gave witness to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and God poured rich blessings on them all. (With great power the apostles gave witness to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and God poured rich blessings on them all.)



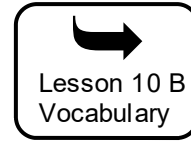
ls10gb.mp3

There was no one in the group who was in need. (There was no one in the group who was in need.) / There was no one in the group who was in need. (There was no one in the group who was in need.) / Those who owned fields or houses (Those who owned fields or houses) / would sell them, (would sell them,) / bring the money received from the sale, (bring the money received from the sale,) / and turn it over to the apostles; (and turn it over to the apostles;) / Those who owned fields or houses would sell them, bring the money received from the sale, and turn it over to the apostles; (Those who owned fields or houses would sell them, bring the money received from the sale, and turn it over to the apostles;) / Those who owned fields or houses would sell them, bring the

money received from the sale, and turn it over to the apostles; (Those who owned fields or houses would sell them, bring the money received from the sale, and turn it over to the apostles;) / and the money was distributed (and the money was distributed) according to the needs of the people. (according to the needs of the people.) / and the money was distributed according to the needs of the people. (and the money was distributed according to the needs of the people.) / and the money was distributed according to the needs of the people. (and the money was distributed according to the needs of the people.)

(Lesson Text: Today's English Version, Copyright ©1992 by the **ABS** Used by permission. All rights reserved.)
Go to www.ethnicharvest.org/books.html to read the Lesson Text in your language.

LESSON 10-B: PRONUNCIATION LESSON



10.1-B Read *The Journey of a Wise Man* aloud for pronunciation practice.

¹ A long time ago, there was a wise man living in a mountain country. The country was beautiful. But it was always difficult to find enough food.

² The people of the High Country decided that they would travel together to the Low Country. When the snow began to melt, they packed all they owned into their wagons. With anticipation mixed with sadness, the wise man and his neighbors left their High Country homes.

³ The wise man noticed something strange taking place soon after they began their journey. As they traveled day after day, his right arm began to feel stiff. The further they traveled from the High Country, the weaker it became. Three things puzzled him. First, his arm always felt the weakest whenever they stopped in a village. Secondly, he noticed that when the travelers from the High Country gathered around a fire at night to talk among themselves, his arm became strong again.

⁴ His third discovery puzzled him the most. When he put his arm behind his back, it no longer felt stiff and useless.

⁵ One day the wise man was startled. As his wagon rounded a bend in a high mountain road, he looked down on his neighbors' wagons ahead of him. He realized that many others were also holding an arm behind their back. As he looked

more closely, he saw that some older people had even tied their arm in place with a rope.

⁶ Why, he wondered, was this happening?

⁷ At last they reached the Low Country. The weather was warm. The fields would produce grain and the forests would supply lumber for their houses. Life looked promising. Promising, that is, except for their weak arms. It was rumored that the Low Country's air caused this strange weakness. Some of the people even said they must learn to live with this weakness if they wanted to stay in the Low Country.

⁸ The adults and children set to work. They cleared the land, planted crops, and prepared lumber to build their new homes. A High Country tailor sewed a new kind of coat that would hold the useless arm in place. He also put leather on the coat so the shoulder could push heavy loads. Even with the new coat, however, work was slow because everyone used only one arm.

⁹ Again, the wise man noticed a strange thing. First, he noticed that--even though it caused them pain--the children soon began using their weak arm again. Secondly, the wise man noticed that whenever the High Country people met together in their first buildings, if they shut all the doors and windows, strength returned to the arms of even the oldest men and women. "Surely," most said, "this proves that the Low Country air is at fault." Most agreed that the only solution was to build houses so strong that all Low Country air could be kept outside. But the wise man was puzzled most because the children seemed to become stronger while playing and working outside in the Low Country air.

¹⁰ The wise man watched his High Country neighbors trying to build their houses while using only one arm. He became fearful for his people's welfare. The new coat helped them work faster with one arm. But winter was coming and neither the houses nor the crops would be ready if everyone continued to work with one arm behind their back.

¹¹ The wise man learned a lesson from the children. He realized that--even though it was painful--using his weak arm for hard work was the only way to make it strong again. Because winter was coming, he knew that he could not stop working on his house in order to spend all his time trying to make his arm strong. But he also knew that he could not finish his house before winter unless he used both arms. The wise man decided that if he was to finish his house before winter, he must spend some time each day strengthening his arm so that he could finish his house more quickly.

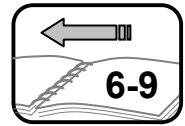
¹² The wise man spent time each day both strengthening his arm and working on his house. He finished his house before winter.

¹³ Some High Country people perished that winter because the snow came before their crops were harvested and their houses finished. They had worked slowly every day because they were afraid to stop working on their houses long enough to strengthen their weak arm.

¹⁴ If you live in the United States and cannot speak English well, you are living as though one arm was tied behind your back. You must work to support your family. But if you do not spend time each day learning English, you will be limited

for the rest of your life. **Spoken English Learned Quickly** was written so that you can study at home and still hold a job. If you will regularly study English each day for six months to a year, your English will greatly improve. You will be more able to earn higher wages, live more effectively in your community, and talk with your children as they learn English in school.

This is the end of Lesson 10. Use your extra time this week to review Lessons 6-9.



DON'T USE TWO NEGATIVES

He **doesn't** have ~~**no**~~ money.

He doesn't have **any** money

He has **no** money

We **didn't** do ~~**nothing**~~ yesterday.

We didn't do **anything** yesterday.

We did **nothing** yesterday.

You **don't** know ~~**nothing**~~ about it.

You don't know **anything** about it.

You know **nothing** about it.

They **won't** see ~~**no one**~~ there.

They won't see **anyone** there.

They will see **no one** there.

We **aren't** going ~~**nowhere**~~ tomorrow.

We aren't going **anywhere** tomorrow.

We are going **nowhere** tomorrow.

I **didn't** get ~~**none**~~ of it.

I didn't get **any** of it.

I got **none** of it.

We **didn't** see ~~**nobody**~~ there.

We didn't see **anybody** there.

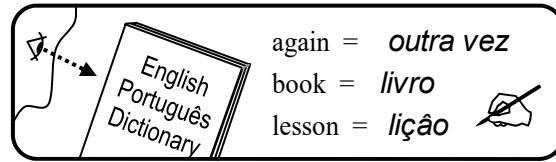
We saw **nobody** there.

I **don't** have ~~**neither**~~ money or food.

I don't have **either** money or food.

I have **neither** money nor food.

LESSON 10-A VOCABULARY



according	judge	to be shaken
again	judgment	to bring
allowance	nobody	to create
answer	none	to deny
anybody	nor	to discuss
anyone	nothing	to distribute
anything	notice	to finish
anywhere	nowhere	to grant
chief	ordinary, ordinarily,	to judge
companion	(extraordinary)	to notice
condition	over, overly	to proclaim
council	proclamation	to realize
creation	realization	to sell
denial	sale	to shake
discussion	sea	to threaten
distribution	threat	to warn
education	to allow	warning
field	to answer	
further, furthest	to be	
indeed	to be right	

Expressions

The members of the Council were amazed **to see how** bold they were. (4:13)

They realized then **that** they had been his companions. (4:13)

But there was **nothing** that **they could** say, because they saw the man standing there. (4:14)

They started **discussing among themselves**, "What shall we do with these men?" (4:15)

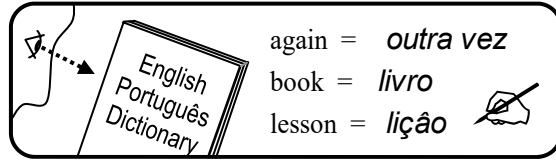
They started discussing among themselves, "**What shall we do** with these men?" (4:15)

Everyone knows that this extraordinary thing has happened. (4:16)

None of them said that any of their belongings were their own. (4:32)

The money was distributed **according to** the needs of the people. (4:35)

LESSON 10-B VOCABULARY



ago	lumber	strange, strangest,
agreement	mix	strangely
air	mountain	surely
anticipation	neighbor	tailor
cause	neither	though
clearing	night	three, third
coat	no longer	to agree
continuation	package	to be
crop	pain, painful, painfully	to be afraid
difficult	plant	to be ahead
discovery	play	to be among
door	preparation	to be at fault
enough	production	to be kept
except	puzzle	to be puzzled
fault	return	to be ready
fear, fearful, fearfully	road	to be rumored
forest	rope	to be startled
grain	rumor	to cause
journey	second, secondly	to clear
land	shoulder	to continue
leather	snow	to discover
left (hand)	solution	to fault
load	soon	to harvest
low, lower, lowest,	stiff	to melt
lowly		to mix

to pack	to puzzle	to stay
to perish	to return	to strengthen
to plant	to round	to supply
to play	to seem	
to prepare	to sew	
to produce	to shut	
to push	to startle	

Expressions

A long time ago, there was a wise man living in a mountain country. (§1)

With anticipation **mixed with** sadness, they left their High Country homes. (§2)

As they traveled **day after day**, his right arm began to feel stiff. (§3)

The further they traveled from the High Country, **the weaker** it became. (§3)

He realized that many others were also holding an arm behind their back. (§5)

At last they reached the Low Country. (§7)

Promising, **that is**, except for their weak arms. (§7)

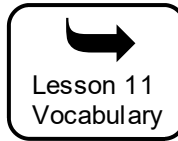
Promising, that is, **except for** their weak arms. (§7)

The adults and children **set to** work. (§8)

The wise man **spent time each** day both strengthening his arm and working on his house. (§12)

You are living **as though** one arm was tied behind your back. (§14)

LESSON 11: EXERCISE LESSON



ls11a.mp3



ls11ab.mp3

11.1 Lesson Text 5:1-21 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

But there was a man, (But there was a man,) / who with his wife, (who with his wife,) / sold some property that belonged to them. (sold some property that belonged to them.) / But there was a man, who with his wife, sold some property that belonged to them. (But there was a man, who with his wife, sold some property that belonged to them.) / But with his wife's agreement (But with his wife's agreement) / he kept part of the money for himself (he kept part of the money for himself) / and turned the rest over to the apostles. (and turned the rest over to the apostles.) / But with his wife's agreement he kept part of the money for himself and turned the rest over to the apostles. (But with his wife's agreement he kept part of the money for himself and turned the rest over to the apostles.)

Peter said to him, (Peter said to him,) / Why did you let Satan take control of you (Why did you let Satan take control of you) / and make you lie to the Holy Spirit (and make you lie to the Holy Spirit) / by keeping part of the money you received for the property? (by keeping part of the money you received for the property?) / Peter said to him, Why did you let Satan take control of you and make you lie to the Holy Spirit by keeping part of the money you received for the property? (Peter said to him, Why did you let Satan take control of you and make you lie to the Holy Spirit by keeping part of the money you received for the property?)

Before you sold the property, (Before you sold the property,) / it belonged to you; (it belonged to you;) / and after you sold it, (and after you sold it,) / the

money was yours. (the money was yours.) / Before you sold the property, it belonged to you; and after you sold it, the money was yours. (Before you sold the property, it belonged to you; and after you sold it, the money was yours.) / Why, then, did you decide to do such a thing? (Why, then, did you decide to do such a thing?) / You have not lied to people, (You have not lied to people,) / you have lied to God. (you have lied to God.) / You have not lied to people, you have lied to God. (You have not lied to people, you have lied to God.)

As soon as the man heard this, (As soon as the man heard this,) / he fell down dead; (he fell down dead;) / and all who heard about it were terrified. (and all who heard about it were terrified.) / As soon as the man heard this, he fell down dead; and all who heard about it were terrified. (As soon as the man heard this, he fell down dead; and all who heard about it were terrified.) / The young men came in, (The young men came in,) / wrapped up his body, (wrapped up his body,) / carried him out, (carried him out,) / and buried him. (and buried him.) / The young men came in, wrapped up his body, carried him out, and buried him. (The young men came in, wrapped up his body, carried him out, and buried him.)

About three hours later (About three hours later) / his wife, not knowing what had happened, (his wife, not knowing what had happened,) / came in. (came in.) / About three hours later his wife, not knowing what had happened, came in. (About three hours later his wife, not knowing what had happened, came in.) / Peter asked her, (Peter asked her,) / Tell me, (Tell me,) / was this the full amount you and your husband received for the property? (was this the full amount you and your husband received for your property?) / Peter asked her, Tell me, was this the full amount you and your



ls11b.mp3



ls11bb.mp3

husband received for the property? (Peter asked her, Tell me, was this the full amount you and your husband received for your property?) / Yes, she answered, the full amount. (Yes, she answered, the full amount.)

So Peter said to her, (So Peter said to her,) / Why did you and your husband decide (Why did you and your husband decide) / to put the Lord's Spirit to the test? (to put the Lord's Spirit to the test?) / So Peter said to her, Why did you and your husband decide to put the Lord's Spirit to the test? (So Peter said to her, Why did you and your husband decide to put the Lord's Spirit to the test?) / The men who buried your husband (The men who buried your husband) / are at the door right now, (are at the door right now,) / and they will carry you out too. (and they will carry you out too.) / The men who buried your husband are at the door right now, and they will carry you out too. (The men who buried your husband are at the door right now, and they will carry you out too.) / At once she fell down at his feet and died. (At once she fell down at his feet and died.)

The young men came in (The young men came in) / and saw that she was dead, (and saw that she was dead,) / so they carried her out (so they carried her out) / and buried her beside her husband. (and buried her beside her husband.) / The young men came in and saw that she was dead, so they carried her out and buried her beside her husband. (The young men came in and saw that she was dead, so they carried her out and buried her beside her husband.) / The whole church (The whole church) / and all the others who heard of this (and all the others who heard of this) / were terrified. (were terrified.) / The whole church and all the others who heard of this were terrified. (The whole church and all the others who heard of this were terrified.)

Many miracles and wonders (Many miracles and wonders) / were being performed among the people (were being performed among the people) / by the apostles. (by the apostles.) / Many miracles and wonders were being performed among the people by the apostles. (Many miracles and wonders were being performed among the people by the apostles.) / All the believers met together in Solomon's Porch. (All the believers met together in Solomon's Porch.) / Nobody outside the group dared join them, (Nobody outside the group dared join them,) / even though the people spoke highly of them. (even though the people spoke highly of them.) / Nobody outside the group dared join them, even though the people spoke highly of them. (Nobody outside the group dared join them, even though the people spoke highly of them.)

But more and more people (But more and more people) / were added to the group of men and women (were added to the group of men and women) / who believed in the Lord. (who believed in the Lord.) / But more and more people were added to the group of men and women who believed in the Lord. (But more and more people were added to the group of men and women who believed in the Lord.)

As a result of what the apostles were doing, (As a result of what the apostles were doing,) / sick people were carried out into the streets (sick people were carried out into the streets) / and placed on beds and mats (and placed on beds and mats) / As a result of what the apostles were doing, sick people were carried out into the streets and placed on beds and mats (As a result of what the apostles were doing, sick people were carried out into the streets and placed on beds and mats) / so that at least Peter's shadow (so that at least Peter's shadow) / might fall on some of them (might fall on some of them) / as he passed by. (as he

passed by.) / so that at least Peter's shadow might fall on some of them as he passed by. (so that at least Peter's shadow might fall on some of them as he passed by.)

And crowds of people (And crowds of people) / came in from the towns around Jerusalem, (came in from the towns around Jerusalem,) / bringing those who were sick (bringing those who were sick) / or who had evil spirits in them; (or who had evil spirits in them;) / and they were all healed. (and they were all healed.) / And crowds of people came in from the towns around Jerusalem, bringing those who were sick or who had evil spirits in them; and they were all healed. (And crowds of people came in from the towns around Jerusalem, bringing those who were sick or who had evil spirits in them; and they were all healed.)

Then the High Priest (Then the High Priest) / and all his companions, (and all his companions,) / members of the local party of religious leaders, (members of the local party of religious leaders,) / Then the High Priest and all his companions, members of the local party of religious leaders, (Then the High Priest and all his companions, members of the local party of religious leaders,) / became extremely jealous of the apostles; (became extremely jealous of the apostles;) / so they decided to take action. (so they decided to take action.) / became extremely jealous of the apostles; so they decided to take action. (became extremely jealous of the apostles; so they decided to take action.)

They arrested the apostles (They arrested the apostles) / and put them in the public jail. (and put them in the public jail.) / They arrested the apostles and put them in the public jail. (They arrested the apostles and put them in the public

jail.) / But that night (But that night) / an angel of the Lord opened the prison gates, (an angel of the Lord opened the prison gates,) / led the apostles out, (led the apostles out,) / and said to them, (and said to them,) / But that night an angel of the Lord opened the prison gates, led the apostles out, and said to them, (But that night an angel of the Lord opened the prison gates, led the apostles out, and said to them,) / Go and stand in the Temple, (Go and stand in the Temple,) / and tell the people all about this new life. (and tell the people all about this new life.) / Go and stand in the Temple, and tell the people all about this new life. (Go and stand in the Temple, and tell the people all about this new life.) / The apostles obeyed, (The apostles obeyed,) / and at dawn they entered the Temple (and at dawn they entered the Temple) / and started teaching. (and started teaching.) / The apostles obeyed, and at dawn they entered the Temple and started teaching. (The apostles obeyed, and at dawn they entered the Temple and started teaching.)

LESSON 11: EXERCISE LESSON

11.2 Repeat each sentence.

11.2a Complete the following sentences with "of falling."

I **am** terrified (I **am** terrified of falling.) / I **was** terrified (I **was** terrified of falling.) / I will be terrified (I will be terrified of falling.)

He **is** terrified (He **is** terrified of falling.) / He **was** terrified (He **was** terrified of falling.) / He will be terrified (He will be terrified of falling.)

You **are** terrified (You **are** terrified of falling.) / You **were** terrified (You **were** terrified of falling.) / You will be terrified (You will be terrified of falling.)

— Complete the following sentences with "by the action."

We **are** terrified (We **are** terrified by the action.) / We **were** terrified (We **were** terrified by the action.) / We will be terrified (We will be terrified by the action.)

They **are** terrified (They **are** terrified by the action.) / They **were** terrified (They **were** terrified by the action.) / They will be terrified (They will be terrified by the action.)

11.2b Complete the following sentences with "with their instructions."

I agree (I agree with their instructions.) / I agreed (I agreed with their instructions.) / I will agree (I will agree with their instructions.)

She agrees (She agrees with their instructions.) / She agreed (She agreed with their instructions.) / She will agree (She will agree with their instructions.)

You agree (You agree with their instructions.) / You agreed (You agreed with their instructions.) / You will agree (You will agree with their instructions.)

— Complete the following sentences with "control of the town."

We agree (We agree to take control of the town.) / We agreed (We agreed to take control of the town.) / We will agree (We will agree to take control of the town.)

They agree (They agree to take control of the town.) / They agreed (They agreed to take control of the town.) / They will agree (They will agree to take control of the town.)

11.2c Complete the following sentences with "action for the public's good."

I take (I take action for the public's good.) / I **took** (I **took** action for the public's good.) / I will take (I will take action for the public's good.)

She takes (She takes action for the public's good.) / She **took** (She **took** action for the public's good.) / She will take (She will take action for the public's good.)

You take (You take action for the public's good.) / You **took** (You **took** action for the public's good.) / You will take (You will take action for the public's good.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to take control of the young men."

We take (We take control of the young men.) / We **took** (We **took** control of the young men.) / We will take (We will take control of the young men.)

They take (They take control of the young men.) / They **took** (They **took** control of the young men.) / They will take (They will take control of the young men.)

11.2d Complete the following sentences with "it by the door."

I place (I place it by the door.) / I placed (I placed it by the door.) / I will place (I will place it by the door.)

She places (She places it by the door.) / She placed (She placed it by the door.) / She will place (She will place it by the door.)

You place (You place it by the door.) / You placed (You placed it by the door.) / You will place (You will place it by the door.)



ls11f.mp3



ls11fb.mp3

— Complete the following sentences with "them down by our feet."

We place (We place them down by our feet.) / We placed (We placed them down by our feet.) / We will place (We will place them down by our feet.)

They place (They place them down by our feet.) / They placed (They placed them down by our feet.) / They will place (They will place them down by our feet.)

11.2e Complete the following sentences with "the store at dawn."

I enter (I enter the store at dawn.) / I entered (I entered the store at dawn.) / I will enter (I will enter the store at dawn.)

She enters (She enters the store at dawn.) / She entered (She entered the store at dawn.) / She will enter (She will enter the store at dawn.)

You enter (You enter the store at dawn.) / You entered (You entered the store at dawn.) / You will enter (You will enter the store at dawn.)

— Complete the following sentences with "public property here."

We enter (We enter public property here.) / We entered (We entered public property here.) / We will enter (We will enter public property here.)

They enter (They enter public property here.) / They entered (They entered public property here.) / They will enter (They will enter public property here.)

11.3 Answer each sentence with "I don't know yet," and "may."



ls11g.mp3

11.3a Will you go tomorrow?

(I don't know yet. I may go tomorrow.) I don't know yet. I may go tomorrow. (I don't know yet. I may go tomorrow.)



ls11gb.mp3

11.3b Will she talk about the emergency?

(I don't know yet. She may talk about the emergency.) I don't know yet. She may talk about the emergency. (I don't know yet. She may talk about the emergency.)

11.3c Will it be a large amount of money?

(I don't know yet. It may be a large amount of money.) I don't know yet. It may be a large amount of money. (I don't know yet. It may be a large amount of money.)

11.3d Will they do all of their work?

(I don't know yet. They may do all of their work.) I don't know yet. They may do all of their work. (I don't know yet. They may do all of their work.)

11.3e Will it be tested soon?

(I don't know yet. It may be tested soon.) I don't know yet. It may be tested soon. (I don't know yet. It may be tested soon.)

11.3f Will we know the results tomorrow?

(I don't know yet. We may know the results tomorrow.) I don't know yet. We may know the results tomorrow. (I don't know yet. We may know the results tomorrow.)

11.3g Will the rest of the money be given away?

(I don't know yet. The rest of the money may be given away.) I don't know yet. The rest of the money may be given away. (I don't know yet. The rest of the money may be given away.)

11.4 **Answer each sentence with "I don't think I (or another person) will. But I (or the other person) might ."**

11.4a Will you go tomorrow?

(I don't think I will. But I might go tomorrow.) I don't think I will. But I might go tomorrow. (I don't think I will. But I might go tomorrow.)

11.4b Will she talk about the emergency?

(I don't think she will. But she might talk about the emergency.) I don't think she will. But she might talk about the emergency. (I don't think she will. But she might talk about the emergency.)

11.4c Will we give a large amount of money?

(I don't think we will. But we might give a large amount of money.) I don't think we will. But we might give a large amount of money. (I don't think we will. But we might give a large amount of money.)

11.4d Will they do all of their work?

(I don't think they will. But they might do all of their work.) I don't think they will. But they might do all of their work. (I don't think they will. But they might do all of their work.)

11.4e Will she test it soon?

(I don't think she will. But she might test it soon.) I don't think she will. But she might test it soon. (I don't think she will. But she might test it soon.)

11.4f Will we know the results tomorrow?

(I don't think we will. But we might know the results tomorrow.) I don't think we will. But we might know the results tomorrow. (I don't think we will. But we might know the results tomorrow.)

11.4g Will the rest of them fall down?

(I don't think they will. But the rest of them might fall down.) I don't think they will. But the rest of them might fall down. (I don't think they will. But the rest of them might fall down.)

11.5 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

11.5a TO TEST (to test) / He promised to test it. (He promised to test it.)

Test. (Test.) / Please test it. (Please test it.)

testing (testing) / He is testing some. (He is testing some.)

tested (tested) / it is tested (it is tested) / it was tested (it was tested) / it will be tested (it will be tested)

I test (I test)	I tested (I tested)	I will test (I will test)
he tests (he tests)	he tested (he tested)	he will test (he will test)
she tests (she tests)	she tested (she tested)	she will test (she will test)
it tests (it tests)	it tested (it tested)	it will test (it will test)
you test (you test)	you tested (you tested)	you will test (you will test)
we test (we test)	we tested (we tested)	we will test (we will test)
they test (they test)	they tested (they tested)	they will test (they will test)

11.5b TO PASS (to pass) / He promised to pass it. (He promised to pass it.)

Pass. (Pass.) / Please pass it. (Please pass it.)

passing (passing) / He is passing some. (He is passing some.)

passed (passed) / it is passed (it is passed) / it was passed (it was passed) / it will be passed (it will be passed)

I pass (I pass)	I passed (I passed)	I will pass (I will pass)
he passes (he passes)	he passed (he passed)	he will pass (he will pass)
she passes (she passes)	she passed (she passed)	she will pass (she will pass)
it passes (it passes)	it passed (it passed)	it will pass (it will pass)
you pass (you pass)	you passed (you passed)	you will pass (you will pass)
we pass (we pass)	we passed (we passed)	we will pass (we will pass)
they pass (they pass)	they passed (they passed)	they will pass (they will pass)

11.5c TO RECEIVE (to receive) / He promised to receive them. (He promised to receive them.)

Receive. (Receive.) / Please receive some. (Please receive some.)

receiving (receiving) / He is receiving some. (He is receiving some.)

received (received) / it is received (it is received) / it was received (it was received) / it will be received (it will be received)

I receive (I receive)	I received (I received)	I will receive (I will receive)
he receives (he receives)	he received (he received)	he will receive (he will receive)
she receives (she receives)	she received (she received)	she will receive (she will receive)
it receives (it receives)	it received (it received)	it will receive (it will receive)
you receive (you receive)	you received (you received)	you will receive (you will receive)
we receive (we receive)	we received (we received)	we will receive (we will receive)
they receive (they receive)	they received (they received)	they will receive (they will receive)

11.5d TO LIE (to lie) / He promised not to lie. (He promised not to lie.)

Lie. (Lie.) / Please don't lie. (Please don't lie.)

lying (lying) / He is lying. (He is lying.)

~~lied~~: *It is **lied** is infrequently or never used.*



ls11i.mp3



ls11ib.mp3

I lie (I lie)	I lied (I lied)	I will lie (I will lie)
he lies (he lies)	he lied (he lied)	he will lie (he will lie)
she lies (she lies)	she lied (she lied)	she will lie (she will lie)
it lies (it lies)	it lied (it lied)	it will lie (it will lie)
you lie (you lie)	you lied (you lied)	you will lie (you will lie)
we lie (we lie)	we lied (we lied)	we will lie (we will lie)
they lie (they lie)	they lied (they lied)	they will lie (they will lie)

11.5e TO WRAP (to wrap) / He promised to wrap it. (He promised to wrap it.)

Wrap. (Wrap.) / Please wrap it. (Please wrap it.)

wrapping (wrapping) / He is wrapping some. (He is wrapping some.)

wrapped (wrapped) / it is wrapped (it is wrapped) / it was wrapped (it was wrapped) / it will be wrapped (it will be wrapped)

I wrap (I wrap)	I wrapped (I wrapped)	I will wrap (I will wrap)
he wraps (he wraps)	he wrapped (he wrapped)	he will wrap (he will wrap)
she wraps (she wraps)	she wrapped (she wrapped)	she will wrap (she will wrap)
it wraps (it wraps)	it wrapped (it wrapped)	it will wrap (it will wrap)
you wrap (you wrap)	you wrapped (you wrapped)	you will wrap (you will wrap)
we wrap (we wrap)	we wrapped (we wrapped)	we will wrap (we will wrap)
they wrap (they wrap)	they wrapped (they wrapped)	they will wrap (they will wrap)

11.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).

11.6a **TO FALL** (to fall) / He promised not to fall. (He promised not to fall.)

Fall. (Fall.) / Please don't fall. (Please don't fall.)

falling (falling) / He is falling. (He is falling.)

~~fallen~~: *It is **fallen*** is infrequently or never used.

I fall (I fall)	I fell (I fell)	I will fall (I will fall)
he falls (he falls)	he fell (he fell)	he will fall (he will fall)
she falls (she falls)	she fell (she fell)	she will fall (she will fall)
it falls (it falls)	it fell (it fell)	it will fall (it will fall)
you fall (you fall)	you fell (you fell)	you will fall (you will fall)
we fall (we fall)	we fell (we fell)	we will fall (we will fall)
they fall (they fall)	they fell (they fell)	they will fall (they will fall)

11.6b **TO MEET** (to meet) / He promised not to meet. (He promised not to meet.)

Meet. (Meet.) / Please meet him. (Please meet him.)



ls11j.mp3



ls11jb.mp3

meeting (meeting) / He is meeting them. (He is meeting them.)

met (met) / it is **met** (it is **met**) / it was **met** (it was **met**) / it will be **met** (it will be **met**)

I meet (I meet)	I met (I met)	I will meet (I will meet)
he meets (he meets)	he met (he met)	he will meet (he will meet)
she meets (she meets)	she met (she met)	she will meet (she will meet)
it meets (it meets)	it met (it met)	it will meet (it will meet)
you meet (you meet)	you met (you met)	you will meet (you will meet)
we meet (we meet)	we met (we met)	we will meet (we will meet)
they meet (they meet)	they met (they met)	they will meet (they will meet)

11.6c **TO LAY** (to lay) / He promised not to lay it down. (He promised not to lay it down.)

Lay. (Lay.) / Please lay it down. (Please lay it down.)

laying (laying) / He is laying them down. (He is laying them down.)

laid (laid) / it is **laid** (it is **laid**) / it was **laid** (it was **laid**) / it will be **laid** (it will be **laid**)

I lay (I lay)	I laid (I laid)	I will lay (I will lay)
he lays (he lays)	he laid (he laid)	he will lay (he will lay)
she lays (she lays)	she laid (she laid)	she will lay (she will lay)
it lays (it lays)	it laid (it laid)	it will lay (it will lay)
you lay (you lay)	you laid (you laid)	you will lay (you will lay)
we lay (we lay)	we laid (we laid)	we will lay (we will lay)
they lay (they lay)	they laid (they laid)	they will lay (they will lay)

11.6d **TO READ** (to read) / He promised not to read it. (He promised not to read it.)

Read. (Read.) / Please read the book. (Please read the book.)

reading (reading) / He is reading to them. (He is reading to them.)

read (read) / it is read (it is read) / it was read (it was read) / it will be read (it will be read)

I read (I read)	I read (I read)	I will read (I will read)
he reads (he reads)	he read (he read)	he will read (he will read)
she reads (she reads)	she read (she read)	she will read (she will read)
it reads (it reads)	it read (it read)	it will read (it will read)
you read (you read)	you read (you read)	you will read (you will read)
we read (we read)	we read (we read)	we will read (we will read)
they read (they read)	they read (they read)	they will read (they will read)



ls11k.mp3

11.7 Repeat each letter of the alphabet.

A / a B / b C / c D / d E / e F / f G / g
H / h I / i J / j K / k L / l M / m N / n
O / o P / p Q / q R / r S / s T / t U / u
V / v W / w X / x Y / y Z / z



ls11kb.mp3

11.8 **I will ask, "Did you put them in jail?"** You will answer, "No, I didn't put them in jail." I will ask, "Did they guard it together?" You will answer, "No, they didn't guard it together."

11.8a Did you put them in jail?

(No, I didn't put them in jail.) No, I didn't put them in jail. (No, I didn't put them in jail.)

11.8b Did they guard it together?

(No, they didn't guard it together.) No, they didn't guard it together. (No, they didn't guard it together.)

11.8c Did she help them work?

(No, she didn't help them work.) No, she didn't help them work. (No, she didn't help them work.)

11.8d Did he find everything himself?

(No, he didn't find everything himself.) No, he didn't find everything himself. (No, he didn't find everything himself.)

11.8e Does she tell them to walk?

(No, she doesn't tell them to walk.) No, she doesn't tell them to walk. (No, she doesn't tell them to walk.)

11.8f Do you come together?

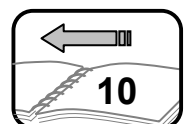
(No, we don't come together.) No, we don't come together. (No, we don't come together.)

11.8g Do we wonder about today?

(No, we don't wonder about today.) No, we don't wonder about today. (No, we don't wonder about today.)

11.8h Does he hold the child's hand?

(No, he doesn't hold the child's hand.) No, he doesn't hold the child's hand. (No, he doesn't hold the child's hand.)



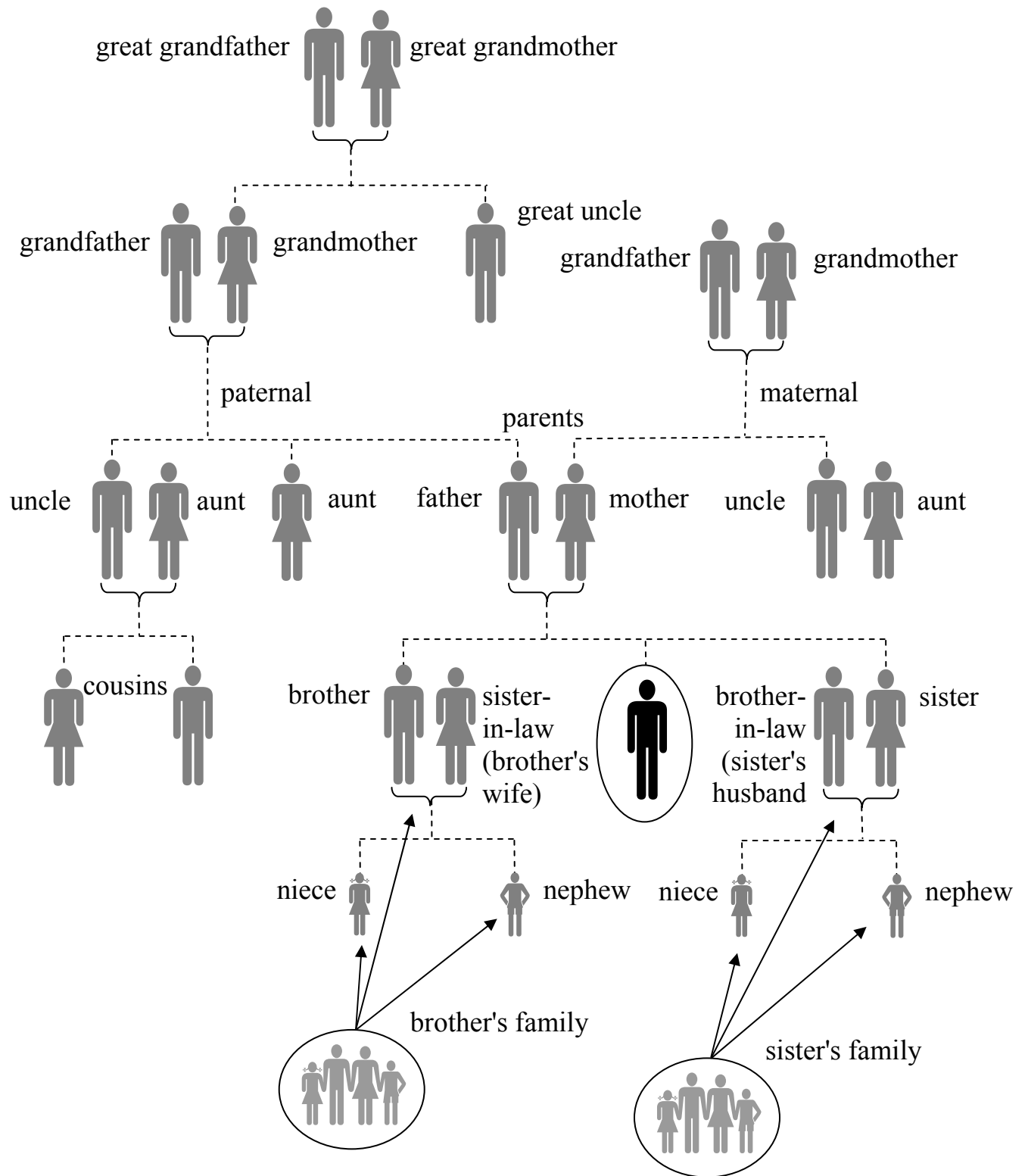
THE VERB AGREES WITH ITS SUBJECT

women agree	The women from that group always agree to control it.	
group agrees	That group of women always agrees to control it.	
students learn	The students in this school learn English.	
school teaches	This school for men teaches English.	
children take	The children from this family take a part with us.	
family takes	This family with three children takes a part with us.	
Peter runs	he runs	Peter sometimes runs.
John and Peter run	they run	John and Peter sometimes run together.
car is	it is	The car is on the road.
car and bus are	they are	The car and bus are on the road.
hand was	it was	His hand was hurt.
hand and arm were	they were	Both his hand and arm were hurt.

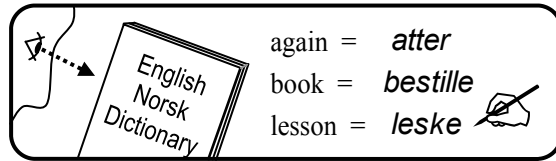
THE USE OF "OTHER"

another is (one person)	Another man is strong.
others are (two or more people)	Others are strong.
the other is (one person)	The other man is strong.
the others are (two or more people)	The others are strong.

THE FAMILY



LESSON 11 VOCABULARY



action	part	to fall
amount	party	to lay
angel	prison	to lie
another	property	to pass
bed	reader	to place
control	receipt	to take
dare	rest	to take action
dawn	right now	to take control
entrance	shadow	to test
extreme, extremely	test	to wrap
lie	to be	town
local	to be terrified	woman, women
mat	to dare	wrapping
might, mighty	to enter	

Expressions

With his wife's agreement he kept part of the money for himself and **turned the rest over to** their leaders. (5:2)

Why did you let him **take control of** you and make you lie? (5:3)

Before you sold the property, it belonged to you; and **after** you sold it, the money was yours. (5:4)

About three **hours later** his wife, not knowing what had happened, came in. (5:7)

Nobody outside the group **dared** join them, even though the people **spoke highly** of them. (5:13)

As a result of what they were doing, people were carried to see them. (5:15)

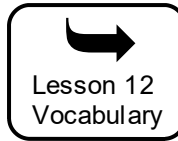
Then the leaders became extremely jealous of them; so **they decided to take action**. (5:17)

But **that night** the prison gates were opened. (5:19)

THE FAMILY VOCABULARY

brother (younger, little, older, big)	great grandmother	old woman (slang, impolite)
brother-in-law	great grandparents	parents
child (children)	great great	sibling(s)
cousin (your generation)	grandparents	sister (younger, little, older, big)
dad	great nephew (grandchild's generation)	sister-in-law
father (paternal)	great niece (grandchild's generation)	spouse
grandchildren	great uncle (grandparent's generation)	twin (brother, sister, identical, fraternal)
granddad		uncle, aunt (father's generation)
granddaughter		uncle, aunt (mother's generation)
grandfather		wife
grandma	husband	
grandmother	mom	
grandpa	mother (maternal)	
grandparents	niece, nephew (children's generation)	
grandson		
great aunt (grandparent's generation)	old man (slang, impolite)	
great grandfather		

LESSON 12: EXERCISE LESSON



12.1 Lesson Text 5:22-42 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

The High Priest and his companions (The High Priest and his companions) / called together all the Jewish elders (called together all the Jewish elders) / for a full meeting of the Council; (for a full meeting of the Council;) / The High Priest and his companions called together all the Jewish elders for a full meeting of the Council; (The High Priest and his companions called together all the Jewish elders for a full meeting of the Council;) / then they sent orders to the prison (then they sent orders to the prison) / to have the apostles brought before them. (to have the apostles brought before them.) / then they sent orders to the prison to have the apostles brought before them. (then they sent orders to the prison to have the apostles brought before them.)

But when the officials arrived, (But when the officials arrived,) / they did not find the apostles in prison, (they did not find the apostles in prison,) / so they returned to the Council and reported, (so they returned to the Council and reported,) / But when the officials arrived, they did not find the apostles in prison, so they returned to the Council and reported, (But when the officials arrived, they did not find the apostles in prison, so they returned to the Council and reported,) / When we arrived at the jail, (When we arrived at the jail,) / we found it locked up tight (we found it locked up tight) / and all the guards on watch at the gates; (and all the guards on watch at the gates;) / When we arrived at the jail, we found it locked up tight and all the guards on watch at the gates; (When we arrived at the jail, we found it locked up tight and all the guards on watch at the gates;) / but when we opened the gates, (but when we opened the

gates,) / we found no one inside. (we found no one inside.) / but when we opened the gates, we found no one inside. (but when we opened the gates, we found no one inside.)

When the chief priests and the officer (When the chief priests and the officer) / in charge of the Temple guards heard this, (in charge of the Temple guards heard this,) / they wondered what had happened to the apostles. (they wondered what had happened to the apostles.) / When the chief priests and the officer in charge of the Temple guards heard this, they wondered what had happened to the apostles. (When the chief priests and the officer in charge of the Temple guards heard this, they wondered what had happened to the apostles.)

Then a man came in and said to them, (Then a man came in and said to them,) / Listen. The men you put in prison (Listen. The men you put in prison) / are in the Temple teaching the people. (are in the Temple teaching the people.) / Then a man came in and said to them, Listen. The men you put in prison are in the Temple teaching the people. (Then a man came in and said to them, Listen. The men you put in prison are in the Temple teaching the people.)

So the officer went off with his men (So the officer went off with his men) / and brought the apostles back. (and brought the apostles back.) / So the officer went off with his men and brought the apostles back. (So the officer went off with his men and brought the apostles back.) / They did not use force, however, (They did not use force, however,) / because they were afraid (because they were afraid) / that the people might stone them. (that the people might stone them.) / They did not use force, however, because they were afraid that the

people might stone them. (They did not use force, however, because they were afraid that the people might stone them.)



ls12b.mp3

They brought the apostles in, (They brought the apostles in,) / made them stand before the Council, (made them stand before the Council,) / and the High Priest questioned them. (and the High Priest questioned them.) / They brought the apostles in, made them stand before the Council, and the High Priest questioned them. (They brought the apostles in, made them stand before the Council, and the High Priest questioned them.)



ls12bb.mp3

We gave you strict orders (We gave you strict orders) / not to teach in the name of this man, he said; (not to teach in the name of this man, he said;) / but see what you have done. (but see what you have done.) / We gave you strict orders not to teach in the name of this man, he said; but see what you have done. (We gave you strict orders not to teach in the name of this man, he said; but see what you have done.) / You have spread your teaching all over Jerusalem, (You have spread your teaching all over Jerusalem,) / and you want to make us responsible for his death. (and you want to make us responsible for his death.) / You have spread your teaching all over Jerusalem, and you want to make us responsible for his death. (You have spread your teaching all over Jerusalem, and you want to make us responsible for his death.)

Peter and the other apostles answered, (Peter and the other apostles answered,) / We must obey God, not men. (We must obey God, not men.) / Peter and the other apostles answered, We must obey God, not men. (Peter and the other apostles answered, We must obey God, not men.)

The God of our ancestors (The God of our ancestors) / raised Jesus from death, (raised Jesus from death,) / after you had killed him (after you had killed him) / by nailing him to a cross. (by nailing him to a cross.) / The God of our ancestors raised Jesus from death, after you had killed him by nailing him to a cross. (The God of our ancestors raised Jesus from death, after you had killed him by nailing him to a cross.) / God raised him to his right side (God raised him to his right side) / as Leader and Savior, (as Leader and Savior,) / God raised him to his right side as Leader and Savior, (God raised him to his right side as Leader and Savior,) / to give the people of Israel (to give the people of Israel) / the opportunity to repent (the opportunity to repent) / and have their sins forgiven. (and have their sins forgiven.) / to give the people of Israel the opportunity to repent and have their sins forgiven. (to give the people of Israel the opportunity to repent and have their sins forgiven.)

We are witnesses to these things (We are witnesses to these things) / we and the Holy Spirit, (we and the Holy Spirit,) / who is God's gift to those who obey him. (who is God's gift to those who obey him.) / We are witnesses to these things—we and the Holy Spirit, who is God's gift to those who obey him. (We are witnesses to these things—we and the Holy Spirit, who is God's gift to those who obey him.)

When the members of the Council heard this, (When the members of the Council heard this,) / they were so furious (they were so furious) / that they wanted to have the apostles put to death. (that they wanted to have the apostles put to death.) / When the members of the Council heard this, they



ls12c.mp3



ls12cb.mp3

were so furious that they wanted to have the apostles put to death. (When the members of the Council heard this, they were so furious that they wanted to have the apostles put to death.)

But one of them (But one of them) / who was a teacher of the Law (who was a teacher of the Law) / and was highly respected by all the people, (and was highly respected by all the people,) / stood up in the Council. (stood up in the Council.) / But one of them who was a teacher of the Law and was highly respected by all the people, stood up in the Council. (But one of them who was a teacher of the Law and was highly respected by all the people, stood up in the Council.)

He ordered the apostles (He ordered the apostles) / to be taken out for a while, (to be taken out for a while,) / and then he said to the Council, (and then he said to the Council,) / He ordered the apostles to be taken out for a while, and then he said to the Council, (He ordered the apostles to be taken out for a while, and then he said to the Council,) / Fellow Israelites, (Fellow Israelites,) / be careful what you do to these men. (be careful what you do to these men.) / Fellow Israelites, be careful what you do to these men. (Fellow Israelites, be careful what you do to these men.)

You remember (You remember) / that a man appeared some time ago, (that a man appeared some time ago,) / claiming to be somebody great, (claiming to be somebody great,) / and about four hundred men joined him. (and about four hundred men joined him.) / You remember that a man appeared some time ago, claiming to be somebody great, and about four hundred men joined him. (You remember that a man appeared some time ago, claiming to be somebody great, and

about four hundred men joined him.) / But he was killed, (But he was killed,) / all his followers were scattered, (all his followers were scattered,) / and his movement died out. (and his movement died out.) / But he was killed, all his followers were scattered, and his movement died out. (But he was killed, all his followers were scattered, and his movement died out.)

After that, (After that,) / another man appeared (another man appeared) / during the time of the census; (during the time of the census;) / After that, another man appeared during the time of the census; (After that, another man appeared during the time of the census;) / he drew a crowd after him, (he drew a crowd after him,) / but he also was killed, (but he also was killed,) / and all his followers were scattered. (and all his followers were scattered.) / he drew a crowd after him, but he also was killed, and all his followers were scattered. (he drew a crowd after him, but he also was killed, and all his followers were scattered.)

And so in this case, (And so in this case,) / I tell you, (I tell you,) / do not take any action against these men. (do not take any action against these men.) / And so in this case, I tell you, do not take any action against these men. (And so in this case, I tell you, do not take any action against these men.) / Leave them alone. (Leave them alone.)



ls12d.mp3



ls12db.mp3

If what they have planned and done (If what they have planned and done) / is of human origin, (is of human origin,) / it will disappear, (it will disappear,) / If what they have planned and done is of human origin, it will disappear, (If what they have planned and done is of human origin, it will disappear,) / but if it comes from God, (but if it comes from God,) / you

cannot possibly defeat them. (you cannot possibly defeat them.) / but if it comes from God, you cannot possibly defeat them. (but if it comes from God, you cannot possibly defeat them.) / You could find yourselves fighting against God. (You could find yourselves fighting against God.)

The Council followed his advice. (The Council followed his advice.) / They called the apostles in, (They called the apostles in,) / had them whipped, (had them whipped,) / and ordered them never again to speak in the name of Jesus; (and ordered them never again to speak in the name of Jesus;) / They called the apostles in, had them whipped, and ordered them never again to speak in the name of Jesus; (They called the apostles in, had them whipped, and ordered them never again to speak in the name of Jesus;) / and then they set them free. (and then they set them free.)

As the apostles left the Council, (As the apostles left the Council,) / they were happy, (they were happy,) / As the apostles left the Council, they were happy, (As the apostles left the Council, they were happy,) / because God had considered them worthy (because God had considered them worthy) / to suffer disgrace for the sake of Jesus. (to suffer disgrace for the sake of Jesus.) / because God had considered them worthy to suffer disgrace for the sake of Jesus. (because God had considered them worthy to suffer disgrace for the sake of Jesus.)

And every day in the Temple (And every day in the Temple) / and in people's homes (and in people's homes) / they continued to teach and preach (they continued to teach and preach) / the Good News about Jesus the Messiah. (the Good News about Jesus the Messiah.) / And every day in the Temple and in people's homes they continued to teach and preach the Good News about Jesus the

Messiah. (And every day in the Temple and in people's homes they continued to teach and preach the Good News about Jesus the Messiah.)

LESSON 12: EXERCISE LESSON

12.2 Repeat each sentence.

12.2a Complete the following sentences with "I (or another person) lock the inside door alone." I will say, "I lock." You will answer, "I lock the inside door alone."

I lock (I lock the inside door alone.) / He locks (He locks the inside door alone.) / You lock (You lock the inside door alone.) / We lock (We lock the inside door alone.) / They lock (They lock the inside door alone.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the prisoner in jail."

I locked (I locked the prisoner in jail.) / She locked (She locked the prisoner in jail.) / You locked (You locked the prisoner in jail.) / We locked (We locked the prisoner in jail.) / They locked (They locked the prisoner in jail.)

— Complete the following sentences with "both of them in the house."

I will lock (I will lock both of them in the house.) / He will lock (He will lock both of them in the house.) / You will lock (You will lock both of them in the house.) / We will lock (We will lock both of them in the house.) / They will lock (They will lock both of them in the house.)

12.2b Complete the following sentences with "it to be a worthy plan."

I consider (I consider it to be a worthy plan.) / I considered (I considered it to be a worthy plan.) / I will consider (I will consider it to be a worthy plan.)

She considers (She considers it to be a worthy plan.) / She considered (She considered it to be a worthy plan.) / She will consider (She will consider it to be a worthy plan.)

You consider (You consider it to be a worthy plan.) / You considered (You considered it to be a worthy plan.) / You will consider (You will consider it to be a worthy plan.)

— Complete the following sentences with "it for your sake."

We consider (We consider it for your sake.) / We considered (We considered it for your sake.) / We will consider (We will consider it for your sake.)

They consider (They consider it for your sake.) / They considered (They considered it for your sake.) / They will consider (They will consider it for your sake.)

12.2c Complete the following sentences with "furious with that official."

I **am** (I **am** furious with that official.) / I **was** (I **was** furious with that official.) / I will be (I will be furious with that official.)



ls12f.mp3



ls12fb.mp3

He **is** (He **is** furious with that official.) / He **was** (He **was** furious with that official.) / He will be (He will be furious with that official.)

You **are** (You **are** furious with that official.) / You **were** (You **were** furious with that official.) / You will be (You will be furious with that official.)

— Complete the following sentences with "responsible for the report."

We **are** (We **are** responsible for the report.) / We **were** (We **were** responsible for the report.) / We will be (We will be responsible for the report.)

They **are** (They **are** responsible for the report.) / They **were** (They **were** responsible for the report.) / They will be (They will be responsible for the report.)

12.2d Complete the following sentences with "to think they are happy."

I continue (I continue to think they are happy.) / He continues (He continues to think they are happy.) / You continue (You continue to think they are happy.) / We continue (We continue to think they are happy.) / They continue (They continue to think they are happy.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to plan while they worked."

I continued (I continued to plan while they worked.) / She continued (She continued to plan while they worked.) / You continued (You continued to

plan while they worked.) / We continued (We continued to plan while they worked.) / They continued (They continued to plan while they worked.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to join the meetings."

I will continue (I will continue to join the meetings.) / He will continue (He will continue to join the meetings.) / You will continue (You will continue to join the meetings.) / We will continue (We will continue to join the meetings.) / They will continue (They will continue to join the meetings.)

12.2e Complete the following sentences with "the news every day."

I follow (I follow the news every day.) / I followed (I followed the news every day.) / I will follow (I will follow the news every day.)

She follows (She follows the news every day.) / She followed (She followed the news every day.) / She will follow (She will follow the news every day.)

You follow (You follow the news every day.) / You followed (You followed the news every day.) / You will follow (You will follow the news every day.)

Complete the following sentences with "each opportunity for a sale."

We follow up (We follow up each opportunity for a sale.) / We followed up (We followed up each opportunity for a sale.) / We will follow up (We will follow up each opportunity for a sale.)

They follow up (They follow up each opportunity for a sale.) / They followed up (They followed up each opportunity for a sale.) / They will follow up (They will follow up each opportunity for a sale.)



ls12g.mp3

12.3 Say each sentence using the word I will give you. I will tell you if the sentence should be in the present, the past, or the future.



ls12gb.mp3

12.3a Use the word "to agree."

Present. The man I know from that group always _____.

(The man I know from that group always agrees.) The man I know from that group always agrees. (The man I know from that group always agrees.)

Past. The man I know from that group always _____.

(The man I know from that group always agreed.) The man I know from that group always agreed. (The man I know from that group always agreed.)

Future. The man I know from that group will always _____.

(The man I know from that group will always agree.) The man I know from that group will always agree. (The man I know from that group will always agree.)

Present. The group of men I know always _____.

(The group of men I know always agrees.) The group of men I know always agrees. (The group of men I know always agrees.)

Past. The group of men I know always _____.

(The group of men I know always agreed.) The group of men I know always agreed. (The group of men I know always agreed.)

Present. The group of men I know will always _____.

(The group of men I know will always agree.) The group of men I know will always agree. (The group of men I know will always agree.)

12.3b Use the word "to claim."

Present. Peter _____ to follow the orders.

(Peter claims to follow the orders.) Peter claims to follow the orders. (Peter claims to follow the orders.)

Past. Peter _____ to follow the orders.

(Peter claimed to follow the orders.) Peter claimed to follow the orders. (Peter claimed to follow the orders.)

Future. Peter _____ to follow the orders.

(Peter will claim to follow the orders.) Peter will claim to follow the orders. (Peter will claim to follow the orders.)

Present. Peter and John _____ to follow the orders.

(Peter and John claim to follow the orders.) Peter and John claim to follow the orders. (Peter and John claim to follow the orders.)

Past. Peter and John _____ to follow the orders.

(Peter and John claimed to follow the orders.) Peter and John claimed to follow the orders. (Peter and John claimed to follow the orders.)

Future. Peter and John _____ to follow the orders.

(Peter and John will claim to follow the orders.) Peter and John will claim to follow the orders. (Peter and John will claim to follow the orders.)

12.3c Use the word "to defeat."



ls12h.mp3

Present. Peter always _____ the others.

(Peter always defeats the others.) Peter always defeats the others. (Peter always defeats the others.)



ls12hb.mp3

Present. Peter and John always _____ the others.

(Peter and John always defeat the others.) Peter and John always defeat the others. (Peter and John always defeat the others.)

12.3d Use the word "to force."

Present. The bus _____ others to take action.

(The bus forces others to take action.) The bus forces others to take action. (The bus forces others to take action.)

Present. Together, the bus and car _____ others to take action.

(Together, the bus and car force others to take action.) Together, the bus and car force others to take action. (Together, the bus and car force others to take action.)

12.3e Use the word "to take."

Present. The children in that family always _____ the bus.

(The children in that family always take the bus.) The children in that family always take the bus. (The children in that family always take the bus.)

Present. That family with three children always _____ the bus.

(That family with three children always takes the bus.) That family with three children always takes the bus. (That family with three children always takes the bus.)

12.4 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

12.4a TO SCATTER (to scatter) / He promised to scatter it. (He promised to scatter it.)

Scatter. (Scatter.) / Please scatter it. (Please scatter it.)

scattering (scattering) / He is scattering some. (He is scattering some.)

scattered (scattered) / it is scattered (it is scattered) / it was scattered (it was scattered) / it will be scattered (it will be scattered)

I scatter (I scatter)	I scattered (I scattered)	I will scatter (I will scatter)
he scatters (he scatters)	he scattered (he scattered)	he will scatter (he will scatter)
she scatters (she scatters)	she scattered (she scattered)	she will scatter (she will scatter)

it scatters (it scatters)	it scattered (it scattered)	it will scatter (it will scatter)
you scatter (you scatter)	you scattered (you scattered)	you will scatter (you will scatter)
we scatter (we scatter)	we scattered (we scattered)	we will scatter (we will scatter)
they scatter (they scatter)	they scattered (they scattered)	they will scatter (they will scatter)



ls12i.mp3

12.4b TO RETURN (to return) / He promised to return. (He promised to return.)

Return. (Return.) / Please return. (Please return.)

returning (returning) / He is returning. (He is returning.)

returned (returned) / it is returned (it is returned) / she was returned (she was returned) / they will be returned (they will be returned)

- I return (I return) / he returns (he returns) / she returns (she returns) / it returns (it returns) / you return (you return) / we return (we return) / they return (they return)
- I returned (I returned) / he returned (he returned) / she returned (she returned) / it returned (it returned) / you returned (you returned) / we returned (we returned) / they returned (they returned)
- I will return (I will return) / he will return (he will return) / she will return (she will return) / it will return (it will return) / you will return (you will return) / we will return (we will return) / they will return (they will return)



ls12ib.mp3

12.4c TO REPORT (to report) / She promised to report it. (She promised to report it.)

Report. (Report.) / Please report it. (Please report it.)

reporting (reporting) / He is reporting to work. (He is reporting to work.)

reported (reported) / it is reported (it is reported) / it was reported (it was reported) / it will be reported (it will be reported)

I report (I report)	I reported (I reported)	I will report (I will report)
he reports (he reports)	he reported (he reported)	he will report (he will report)
she reports (she reports)	she reported (she reported)	she will report (she will report)
it reports (it reports)	it reported (it reported)	it will report (it will report)
you report (you report)	you reported (you reported)	you will report (you will report)
we report (we report)	we reported (we reported)	we will report (we will report)
they report (they report)	they reported (they reported)	they will report (they will report)

12.5 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).

12.5a **TO DRAW** (to draw) / He promised to draw it. (He promised to draw it.)

Draw. (Draw.) / Please draw it. (Please draw it.)

drawing (drawing) / He is drawing it. (He is drawing it.)

drawn (drawn) / it is **drawn** (it is **drawn**) / it was **drawn** (it was **drawn**) /
it will be **drawn** (it will be **drawn**)

- I draw (I draw) / he draws (he draws) / she draws (she draws) / it draws (it draws) / you draw (you draw) / we draw (we draw) / they draw (they draw)
- I **drew** (I **drew**) / he **drew** (he **drew**) / she **drew** (she **drew**) / it **drew** (it **drew**) / you **drew** (you **drew**) / we **drew** (we **drew**) / they **drew** (they **drew**)
- I will draw (I will draw) / he will draw (he will draw) / she will draw (she will draw) / it will draw (it will draw) / you will draw (you will draw) / we will draw (we will draw) / they will draw (they will draw)

12.5b **TO FIGHT** (to fight) / He promised not to fight. (He promised not to fight.)

Fight. (Fight.) / Please don't fight. (Please don't fight.)



ls12j.mp3



ls12jb.mp3

fighting (fighting) / He is fighting. (He is fighting.)

fought (fought) / it is **fought** (it is **fought**) / it was **fought** (it was **fought**)

I fight (I fight)	I fought (I fought)	I will fight (I will fight)
he fights (he fights)	he fought (he fought)	he will fight (he will fight)
she fights (she fights)	she fought (she fought)	she will fight (she will fight)
it fights (it fights)	it fought (it fought)	it will fight (it will fight)
you fight (you fight)	you fought (you fought)	you will fight (you will fight)
we fight (we fight)	we fought (we fought)	we will fight (we will fight)
they fight (they fight)	they fought (they fought)	they will fight (they will fight)

12.5c **TO SLEEP** (to sleep) / He promised to sleep. (He promised to sleep.)

Sleep. (Sleep.) / Please sleep. (Please sleep.)

sleeping (sleeping) / He is sleeping. (He is sleeping.)

~~**slept**~~: *It is **slept** is infrequently or never used.*

- I sleep (I sleep) / he sleeps (he sleeps) / she sleeps (she sleeps) / it sleeps (it sleeps) / you sleep (you sleep) / we sleep (we sleep) / they sleep (they sleep)
- I **slept** (I **slept**) / he **slept** (he **slept**) / she **slept** (she **slept**) / it **slept** (it **slept**) / you **slept** (you **slept**) / we **slept** (we **slept**) / they **slept** (they **slept**)
- I will sleep (I will sleep) / he will sleep (he will sleep) / she will sleep (she will sleep) / it will sleep (it will sleep) / you will sleep (you will sleep) / we will sleep (we will sleep) / they will sleep (they will sleep)

12.5d **TO HAVE** (to have) / He promised to have some. (He promised to have some.)

Have. (Have.) / Please have some. (Please have some.)

having (having) / He is having some. (He is having some.)

~~**had**~~: *It is **had** is infrequently or never used.*

I have (I have)	I had (I had)	I will have (I will have)
he has (he has)	he had (he had)	he will have (he will have)
she has (she has)	she had (she had)	she will have (she will have)
it has (it has)	it had (it had)	it will have (it will have)
you have (you have)	you had (you had)	you will have (you will have)
we have (we have)	we had (we had)	we will have (we will have)
they have (they have)	they had (they had)	they will have (they will have)

12.6 **I will say, " Do not take any action against them."** You will answer,
 "Leave them alone. Do not take any action against them." I will say,
 "He has not defeated you." You will answer, "Leave him alone. He has
 not defeated you."



ls12k.mp3



ls12kb.mp3

12.6a Do not take any action against them.

(Leave them alone. Do not take any action against them.) Leave them alone.

Do not take any action against them. (Leave them alone. Do not take any
 action against them.)

12.6b He has not defeated you.

(Leave him alone. He has not defeated you.) Leave him alone. He has not
 defeated you. (Leave him alone. He has not defeated you.)

12.6c We will not disappear.

(Leave us alone. We will not disappear.) Leave us alone. We will not
 disappear. (Leave us alone. We will not disappear.)

12.6d It might die out by itself.

(Leave it alone. It might die out by itself.) Leave it alone. It might die out by itself. (Leave it alone. It might die out by itself.)

12.6e She is not responsible for the meeting.

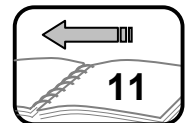
(Leave her alone. She is not responsible for the meeting.) Leave her alone. She is not responsible for the meeting. (Leave her alone. She is not responsible for the meeting.)

12.6f He did not know the origin of the plan.

(Leave him alone. He did not know the origin of the plan.) Leave him alone. He did not know the origin of the plan. (Leave him alone. He did not know the origin of the plan.)

12.6g They will be furious when they join the others.

(Leave them alone. They will be furious when they join the others.) Leave them alone. They will be furious when they join the others. (Leave them alone. They will be furious when they join the others.)



THE TIME OF THE VERB'S ACTION

Two past actions happened at the same time.

	Two actions happened together.	
She	said "hello" when she entered	the house.
The car	ran out of gas and stopped .	
We	sent the gift when we knew	she left .

One past action happened before the other.

The first past time.	The second past time.	The completed action.
She had already	entered the house	before she said "hello."
The car had run out of gas	before it stopped .	
We had already sent the gift	before we knew	she left .

Two future actions will happen at the same time.

	Two actions will happen together.	
She	will say "hello" when you enter	the house.
The car	will run out of gas and stop .	
We	will send the gift when we know	she is leaving.

One future action will happen before the other.

The first future time.	The second future time.
She will have said "hello"	before you enter the house.
The car will have run out of gas	before it stops .
We will have sent the gift	before we know she is leaving.

"WHERE" AND "WHEN"

Where and a place

Where is used to ask a question about a place.

Where will they go tomorrow?

Where is my book?

Where is the closest bus stop?

Where can be used to identify a place.

This is the place **where** we will stand.

He followed the men to the house **where** they were meeting.

He will show the officer **where** the woman was hurt.

When and time

When is used to ask a question about time.

When will we leave?

When does the bus arrive?

When did he finish his work?

When can be used to identify the time something happened.

They were afraid **when** we left.

We don't know **when** it will be finished.

I need to leave **when** my car is fixed.

USING THE WORD "If"

(Past) = past tense, (Present) = present tense, (Future) = future tense.

When something is true. ^(Present + Future)

1. If we **take**^(Present) this road, we **will go past**^(Future) the hospital.
 - The hospital is on this road.
2. If we **continue**^(Present) working, we **will finish**^(Future) the lesson today.
 - We will be able to finish the lesson today if we do not stop working.

When something depends on something else ^(Present + Future)

1. If you **study**^(Present) the lessons, you **will learn**^(Future) to speak English quickly.
 - If you study, you will learn to speak English quickly.
 - But if you don't study, you will not learn to speak English.
2. If we **walk**^(Present) quickly, we **will arrive**^(Future) on time.
 - If we walk quickly, we will not be late.
 - If we walk slowly, we will be late.

An unlikely possibility ^(Past + Future)

1. If I **had**^(Past) the time, I **would go**^(Future) home.
 - But I don't have the time, so I probably will not go home.
2. If we **had**^(Past) enough money, we **would build**^(Future) a new house.
 - But we don't have enough money, so we will not build a house.

USING THE WORD "IF" (continued)

(Past) = past tense, (Present) = present tense, (Future) = future tense.

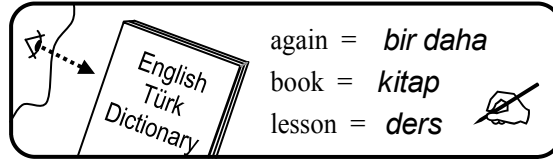
An event that did not happen ^(Past + Past)

1. If they **had had**^(Past) the time, they **would have gone**^(Past) home.
 - But they did not have the time, so they did not go home.
2. If I **had fixed**^(Past) my car yesterday, I **would have arrived**^(Past) on time.
 - But I did not fix my car yesterday, so I was late.

Something that is contrary to what is happening ^(Past + would, could, or might)

1. If we **were driving**^(Past) the car, we **could take** the other road.
 - But we are not driving the car, so we cannot take the other road.
2. If we **had worked**^(Past) more quickly, we **would already be** finished.
 - But we worked slowly, so we are not finished.
3. If I **had read**^(Past) the book, I **might have understood** the lesson.
 - But I did not read the book, so I do not understand the lesson.

LESSON 12 VOCABULARY



against	newspaper	to draw
census	official	to fight
claim	opportunity	to follow
consideration	origin, originally	to force
defeat	past	to identify
disagreement	preacher	to join
disappearance	repentance	to lock
disgrace	report	to nail
drawing	sake	to plan
event	savior	to preach
fight	stone	to repent
follower	to be	to report
following	to be completed	to scatter
for the sake	to be contrary	to whip
force	to claim	unlikely
human, humanly	to consider	while
lock	to defeat	whip
movement	to depend	
nail	to die out	
news	to disappear	

Expressions

When the officials arrived, **they did not find** the men in prison. (5:22)

When we arrived at the jail, we found it **locked up tight**. (5:23)

We **gave** you **strict orders** not to teach in the name of this man. (5:28)

When the members of the Council heard this, they were **so furious that** they wanted to have them put to death. (5:33)

One of them was a teacher and was **highly respected** by all the people. (5:34)

He said, "**Be careful what you do** to these men." (5:35)

All his followers **were scattered**, and his movement **died out**. (5:36)

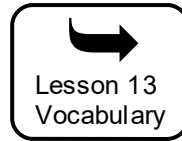
Do not take any action against these men. **Leave them alone!** (5:38)

If what they planned is **of human origin**, it will disappear. (5:38)

The Council **followed** his **advice**. (5:39)

They called the men in and ordered them **never again** to speak, and then they **set them free**. (5:40)

LESSON 13: EXERCISE LESSON



ls13a.mp3



ls13ab.mp3

13.1 Lesson Text 6:1-15 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

Some time later, (Some time later,) / as the number of disciples kept growing, (as the number of disciples kept growing,) / there was a quarrel between (there was a quarrel between) / the Greek-speaking Jews and the native Jews. (the Greek-speaking Jews and the native Jews.) / Some time later, as the number of disciples kept growing, there was a quarrel between the Greek-speaking Jews and the native Jews. (Some time later, as the number of disciples kept growing, there was a quarrel between the Greek-speaking Jews and the native Jews.)

The Greek-speaking Jews (The Greek-speaking Jews) / claimed that their widows were being neglected (claimed that their widows were being neglected) / in the daily distribution of funds. (in the daily distribution of funds.) / The Greek-speaking Jews claimed that their widows were being neglected in the daily distribution of funds. (The Greek-speaking Jews claimed that their widows were being neglected in the daily distribution of funds.)

So the twelve apostles (So the twelve apostles) / called the whole group of believers together and said, (called the whole group of believers together and said,) / So the twelve apostles called the whole group of believers together and said, (So the twelve apostles called the whole group of believers together and said,) / It is not right for us to neglect the preaching of God's word (It is not right for us to neglect the preaching of God's word) / in order to handle finances. (in order to handle finances.) / It is not right for us to neglect the preaching of God's

word in order to handle finances. (It is not right for us to neglect the preaching of God's word in order to handle finances.)

So then, friends, (So then, friends,) / choose seven men among you (choose seven men among you) / who are known to be full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom, (who are known to be full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom,) / So then, friends, choose seven men among you who are known to be full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom, (So then, friends, choose seven men among you who are known to be full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom,) / and we will put them in charge of this matter. (and we will put them in charge of this matter.)

We ourselves, then, (We ourselves, then,) / will give our full time to prayer and the work of preaching. (will give our full time to prayer and the work of preaching.) / We ourselves, then, will give our full time to prayer and the work of preaching. (We ourselves, then, will give our full time to prayer and the work of preaching.)

The whole group was pleased with the apostles' proposal, (The whole group was pleased with the apostles' proposal,) / so they chose seven men. (so they chose seven men.) / The whole group was pleased with the apostles' proposal, so they chose seven men. (The whole group was pleased with the apostles' proposal, so they chose seven men.)

The group presented them to the apostles, (The group presented them to the apostles,) / who prayed and placed their hands on them. (who prayed and placed their hands on them.) / The group presented them to the apostles, who prayed and placed their hands on them. (The group presented



ls13b.mp3



ls13bb.mp

them to the apostles, who prayed and placed their hands on them.) / And so the word of God continued to spread. (And so the word of God continued to spread.)

The number of disciples in Jerusalem grew larger and larger, (The number of disciples in Jerusalem grew larger and larger,) / and a great number of priests accepted the faith. (and a great number of priests accepted the faith.) / The number of disciples in Jerusalem grew larger and larger, and a great number of priests accepted the faith. (The number of disciples in Jerusalem grew larger and larger, and a great number of priests accepted the faith.)

Stephen, a man richly blessed by God (Stephen, a man richly blessed by God) / and full of power, (and full of power,) / performed great miracles and wonders among the people. (performed great miracles and wonders among the people.) / Stephen, a man richly blessed by God and full of power, performed great miracles and wonders among the people. (Stephen, a man richly blessed by God and full of power, performed great miracles and wonders among the people.)

But he was opposed by some men (But he was opposed by some men) / who were members of the synagogue of the Freedmen, (who were members of the synagogue of the Freedmen,) / as it was called. (as it was called). But he was opposed by some men who were members of the synagogue of the Freedmen, as it was called. (But he was opposed by some men who were members of the synagogue of the Freedmen, as it was called.) / They and other Jews (They and other Jews) / from the provinces of Asia (from the provinces of Asia) / started arguing with Stephen. (started arguing with Stephen.) / They and other Jews from the provinces of Asia started arguing with Stephen. (They and other Jews from the provinces of Asia started arguing with Stephen.)

But the Spirit gave Stephen such wisdom (But the Spirit gave Stephen such wisdom) / that when he spoke, (that when he spoke,) / they could not refute him. (they could not refute him.) / But the Spirit gave Stephen such wisdom that when he spoke, they could not refute him. (But the Spirit gave Stephen such wisdom that when he spoke, they could not refute him.) / So they bribed some men to say, (So they bribed some men to say,) / We heard him speaking against Moses and against God. (We heard him speaking against Moses and against God.) / So they bribed some men to say, We heard him speaking against Moses and against God. (So they bribed some men to say, We heard him speaking against Moses and against God.)

In this way (In this way) / they stirred up the people, (they stirred up the people,) / the elders, (the elders,) / and the teachers of the Law. (and the teachers of the Law.) / In this way they stirred up the people, the elders, and the teachers of the Law. (In this way they stirred up the people, the elders, and the teachers of the Law.) / They seized Stephen (They seized Stephen) / and took him before the Council. (and took him before the Council.) / They seized Stephen and took him before the Council. (They seized Stephen and took him before the Council.) / Then they brought in some men to tell lies about him. (Then they brought in some men to tell lies about him.)

This man, they said, (his man, they said,) / is always talking against our sacred Temple (is always talking against our sacred Temple) / and the Law of Moses. (and the Law of Moses.) / This man, they said, is always talking against our sacred Temple and the Law of Moses. (This man, they said, is always talking against our sacred Temple and the Law of Moses.) / We heard him say (We heard him say) / that this Jesus of Nazareth (that this Jesus of Nazareth) / will


ls13c.mp3


ls13cb.mp3

tear down the Temple (will tear down the Temple) / We heard him say that this Jesus of Nazareth will tear down the Temple (We heard him say that this Jesus of Nazareth will tear down the Temple) / and change all the customs (and change all the customs) / which have come down to us from Moses. (which have come down to us from Moses.) / and change all the customs which have come down to us from Moses. (and change all the customs which have come down to us from Moses.)

All those sitting in the Council (All those sitting in the Council) / fixed their eyes on Stephen (fixed their eyes on Stephen) / and saw that his face looked like the face of an angel. (and saw that his face looked like the face of an angel.) / All those sitting in the Council fixed their eyes on Stephen and saw that his face looked like the face of an angel. (All those sitting in the Council fixed their eyes on Stephen and saw that his face looked like the face of an angel.)

LESSON 13: EXERCISE LESSON

13.2 Repeat each sentence.

13.2a Complete the following sentences with "I (or another person) accept the wisdom of their proposal." I will say, "I accept." You will answer, "I accept the wisdom of their proposal."

I accept (I accept the wisdom of their proposal.) / He accepts (He accepts the wisdom of their proposal.) / You accept (You accept the wisdom of their proposal.) / We accept (We accept the wisdom of their proposal.) / They accept (They accept the wisdom of their proposal.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the widow's help."

I accepted (I accepted the widow's help.) / She accepted (She accepted the widow's help.) / You accepted (You accepted the widow's help.) / We accepted (We accepted the widow's help.) / They accepted (They accepted the widow's help.)

— Complete the following sentences with "their work."

I will not accept (I will not accept their work.) / He will not accept (He will not accept their work.) / You will not accept (You will not accept their work.) / We will not accept (We will not accept their work.) / They will not accept (They will not accept their work.)

13.2b Complete the following sentences with "to using those funds."

I **am** opposed (I **am** opposed to using those funds.) / I **was** opposed (I **was** opposed to using those funds.) / I will be opposed (I will be opposed to using those funds.)

He **is** opposed (He **is** opposed to using those funds.) / He **was** opposed (He **was** opposed to using those funds.) / He will be opposed (He will be opposed to using those funds.)

You **are** opposed (You **are** opposed to using those funds.) / You **were** opposed (You **were** opposed to using those funds.) / You will be opposed (You will be opposed to using those funds.)

— Complete the following sentences with "opposed to that plan."

We **are** (We **are** opposed to that plan.) / We **were** (We **were** opposed to that plan.) / We will be (We will be opposed to that plan.)

They **are** (They **are** opposed to that plan.) / They **were** (They **were** opposed to that plan.) / They will be (They will be opposed to that plan.)

13.2c Complete the following sentences with "with his friends."

I never argue (I never argue with his friends.) / I never argued (I never argued with his friends.) / I will never argue (I will never argue with his friends.)

She never argues (She never argues with his friends.) / She never argued
(She never argued with his friends.) / She will never argue (She will never
argue with his friends.)

You never argue (You never argue with his friends.) / You never argued
(You never argued with his friends.) / You will never argue (You will never
argue with his friends.)

— Complete the following sentences with "among ourselves."

We never argue (We never argue among ourselves.) / We never argued (We
never argued among ourselves.) / We will never argue (We will never argue
among ourselves.)

— Complete the following sentences with "among themselves."

They never argue (They never argue among themselves.) / They never
argued (They never argued among themselves.) / They will never argue
(They will never argue among themselves.)

- 13.3 I will ask, "Do the children need this book?" You will answer, "No.
But I know they need that book." I will ask, "Does he want to read these
books?" You will answer, "No. But I know he wants to read those
books."



ls13e.mp3



ls13eb.mp3

13.3a Do the children need this book?

(No. But I know they need that book.) No. But I know they need that book.

(No. But I know they need that book.)

13.3b Does he want to read these books?

(No. But I know he wants to read those books.) No. But I know he wants to read those books. (No. But I know he wants to read those books.)

13.3c Do we already have people from this group?

(No. But I know we already have people from that group.) No. But I know we already have people from that group. (No. But I know we already have people from that group.)

13.3d Does she take part in these meetings?

(No. But I know she takes part in those meetings.) No. But I know she takes part in those meetings. (No. But I know she takes part in those meetings.)

13.3e Did they bribe this official?

(No. But I know they bribed that official.) No. But I know they bribed that official. (No. But I know they bribed that official.)

13.3f Did she argue with this officer?

(No. But I know she argued with that officer.) No. But I know she argued with that officer. (No. But I know she argued with that officer.)

13.3g Did we neglect these children yesterday?

(No. But I know we neglected those children yesterday.) No. But I know we neglected those children yesterday. (No. But I know we neglected those children yesterday.)

13.3h Do I need to take this check to him?

(No. But I know you need to take that check to him.) No. But I know you need to take that check to him. (No. But I know you need to take that check to him.)

13.3i Did we ask these women to wait for the bus?

(No. But I know we asked those women to wait for the bus.) No. But I know we asked those women to wait for the bus. (No. But I know we asked those women to wait for the bus.)

13.4 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

13.4a TO HANDLE (to handle) / He promised to handle it. (He promised to handle it.)

Handle. (Handle.) / Please don't handle it. (Please don't handle it.)

handling (handling) / He is handling it. (He is handling it.)

handled (handled) / it is handled (it is handled) / it was handled (it was handled) / it will be handled (it will be handled)

I handle (I handle)	I handled (I handled)	I will handle (I will handle)
he handles (he handles)	he handled (he handled)	he will handle (he will handle)
she handles (she handles)	she handled (she handled)	she will handle (she will handle)
it handles (it handles)	it handled (it handled)	it will handle (it will handle)

you handle (you handle)	you handled (you handled)	you will handle (you will handle)
we handle (we handle)	we handled (we handled)	we will handle (we will handle)
they handle (they handle)	they handled (they handled)	they will handle (they will handle)



13.4b TO STIR (to stir) / He promised to stir it. (He promised to stir it.)

ls13f.mp3

Stir. (Stir.) / Please don't stir it. (Please don't stir it.)

stirring (stirring) / He is stirring it. (He is stirring it.)

stirred (stirred) / it is stirred (it is stirred) / it was stirred (it was stirred) /

it will be stirred (it will be stirred)

- I stir (I stir) / he stirs (he stirs) / she stirs (she stirs) / it stirs (it stirs) / you stir (you stir) / we stir (we stir) / they stir (they stir)
- I stirred (I stirred) / he stirred (he stirred) / she stirred (she stirred) / it stirred (it stirred) / you stirred (you stirred) / we stirred (we stirred) / they stirred (they stirred)
- I will stir (I will stir) / he will stir (he will stir) / she will stir (she will stir) / it will stir (it will stir) / you will stir (you will stir) / we will stir (we will stir) / they will stir (they will stir)



ls13fb.mp3

13.4c TO REFUTE (to refute) / He wanted to refute it. (He wanted

to refute it.)

Refute. (Refute.) / Please don't refute it. (Please don't refute it.)

refuting (refuting) / He is refuting it. (He is refuting it.)

refuted (refuted) / it is refuted (it is refuted) / it was refuted (it was refuted) /

it will be refuted (it will be refuted)

I refute (I refute)	I refuted (I refuted)	I will refute (I will refute)
he refutes (he refutes)	he refuted (he refuted)	he will refute (he will refute)
she refutes (she refutes)	she refuted (she refuted)	she will refute (she will refute)
it refutes (it refutes)	it refuted (it refuted)	it will refute (it will refute)

you refute (you refute)	you refuted (you refuted)	you will refute (you will refute)
we refute (we refute)	we refuted (we refuted)	we will refute (we will refute)
they refute (they refute)	they refuted (they refuted)	they will refute (they will refute)

13.4d TO PERFORM (to perform) / He promised not to perform it. (He promised not to perform it.)

Perform. (Perform.) / Please don't perform it. (Please don't perform it.)

Performing (performing) / He is performing it. (He is performing it.)

performed (performed) / it is performed (it is performed) / it was performed (it was performed) / it will be performed (it will be performed)

- I perform (I perform) / he performs (he performs) / she performs (she performs) / it performs (it performs) / you perform (you perform) / we perform (we perform) / they perform (they perform)
- I performed (I performed) / he performed (he performed) / she performed (she performed) / it performed (it performed) / you performed (you performed) / we performed (we performed) / they performed (they performed)
- I will perform (I will perform) / he will perform (he will perform) / she will perform (she will perform) / it will perform (it will perform) / you will perform (you will perform) / we will perform (we will perform) / they will perform (they will perform)



13.4e TO PRESENT (to present) / He promised to present it. (He promised to present it.)

ls13g.mp3

Present. (Present.) / Please don't present it. (Please don't present it.)



presenting (presenting) / He is presenting it. (He is presenting it.)

ls13gb.mp3

presented (presented) / it is presented (it is presented) / it was presented (it was presented) / it will be presented (it will be presented)

I present (I present)	I presented (I presented)	I will present (I will present)
he presents (he presents)	he presented (he presented)	he will present (he will present)
she presents (she presents)	she presented (she presented)	she will present (she will present)
it presents (it presents)	it presented (it presented)	it will present (it will present)
you present (you present)	you presented (you presented)	you will present (you will present)
we present (we present)	we presented (we presented)	we will present (we will present)
they present (they present)	they presented (they presented)	they will present (they will present)

13.4f TO QUARREL (to quarrel) / They promised not to quarrel. (They promised not to quarrel.)

Quarrel. (Quarrel.) / Please don't quarrel. (Please don't quarrel.)

quarreling (quarreling) / They are quarreling. (They are quarreling.)

~~quarreled~~: *It is **quarreled** is infrequently or never used.*

- I quarrel (I quarrel) / he quarrels (he quarrels) / she quarrels (she quarrels) / it quarrels (it quarrels) / you quarrel (you quarrel) / we quarrel (we quarrel) / they quarrel (they quarrel)
- I quarreled (I quarreled) / he quarreled (he quarreled) / she quarreled (she quarreled) / it quarreled (it quarreled) / you quarreled (you quarreled) / we quarreled (we quarreled) / they quarreled (they quarreled)
- I will quarrel (I will quarrel) / he will quarrel (he will quarrel) / she will quarrel (she will quarrel) / it will quarrel (it will quarrel) / you will quarrel (you will quarrel) / we will quarrel (we will quarrel) / they will quarrel (they will quarrel)

13.5 **I will ask, "Do you speak English?"** You will answer, "Yes, I do speak English." I will say, "He doesn't speak English, does he?" You will answer, "Yes, he does speak English."

13.5a Do you speak English?

(Yes, I do speak English.) Yes, I do speak English. (Yes, I do speak English.)

13.5b He doesn't speak English, does he?

(Yes, he does speak English.) Yes, he does speak English. (Yes, he does speak English.)

13.5c Does she perform well with others?

(Yes, she does perform well with others.) Yes, she does perform well with others. (Yes, she does perform well with others.)

13.5d Did we give the widow money?

(Yes, we did give the widow money.) Yes, we did give the widow money. (Yes, we did give the widow money.)

13.5e We don't have gas in the car, do we?

(Yes, we do have gas in the car.) Yes, we do have gas in the car. (Yes, we do have gas in the car.)

13.5f You don't want to accept that family, do you?

(Yes, I do want to accept that family.) Yes, I do want to accept that family. (Yes, I do want to accept that family.)

13.5g Does she stand at the bus stop?

(Yes, she does stand at the bus stop.) Yes, she does stand at the bus stop.

(Yes, she does stand at the bus stop.)

13.5h They didn't argue about the meeting, did they?

(Yes, they did argue about the meeting.) Yes, they did argue about the meeting. (Yes, they did argue about the meeting.)

13.5i Does the noise become louder every day?

(Yes, the noise does become louder every day.) Yes, the noise does become louder every day. (Yes, the noise does become louder every day.)

13.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).



ls13h.mp3

13.6a **TO DRINK** (to drink) / He promised to drink it. (He promised to drink it.)

Drink. (Drink.) / Please drink it. (Please drink it.)

drinking (drinking) / He is drinking it. (He is drinking it.)

drunk (drunk) / he is drunk (he is drunk) / he was drunk (he was drunk) / he will be drunk (he will be drunk)

- I drink (I drink) / he drinks (he drinks) / she drinks (she drinks) / it drinks (it drinks) / you drink (you drink) / we drink (we drink) / they drink (they drink)
- I **drank** (I **drank**) / he **drank** (he **drank**) / she **drank** (she **drank**) / it **drank** (it **drank**) / you **drank** (you **drank**) / we **drank** (we **drank**) / they **drank** (they **drank**)



ls13hb.mp3

- I will drink (I will drink) / he will drink (he will drink) / she will drink (she will drink) / it will drink (it will drink) / you will drink (you will drink) / we will drink (we will drink) / they will drink (they will drink)

13.6b **TO STEAL** (to steal) / He promised not to steal. (He promised not to steal.)

Steal. (Steal.) / Please don't steal. (Please don't steal.)

stealing (stealing) / He is not stealing them. (He is not stealing them.)

stolen (**stolen**) / it is **stolen** (it is **stolen**) / it was **stolen** (it was **stolen**) / it will be **stolen** (it will be **stolen**)

I steal (I steal)	I stole (I stole)	I will steal (I will steal)
he steals (he steals)	he stole (he stole)	he will steal (he will steal)
she steals (she steals)	she stole (she stole)	she will steal (she will steal)
it steals (it steals)	it stole (it stole)	it will steal (it will steal)
you steal (you steal)	you stole (you stole)	you will steal (you will steal)
we steal (we steal)	we stole (we stole)	we will steal (we will steal)
they steal (they steal)	they stole (they stole)	they will steal (they will steal)

13.6c **TO COST** (to cost) / He doesn't want it to cost too much.

(He doesn't want it to cost too much.)

Cost. (Cost.) / Don't cost so much. (Don't cost so much.)

costing (costing) / It is costing too much. (It is costing too much.)

~~cost~~: *It is **cost*** is infrequently or never used.

- I cost (I cost) / he costs (he costs) / she costs (she costs) / it costs (it costs) / you cost (you cost) / we cost (we cost) / they cost (they cost)
- I **cost** (I **cost**) / he **cost** (he **cost**) / she **cost** (she **cost**) / it **cost** (it **cost**) / you **cost** (you **cost**) / we **cost** (we **cost**) / they **cost** (they **cost**)



ls13i.mp3



ls13ib.mp3

- I will cost (I will cost) / he will cost (he will cost) / she will cost (she will cost) / it will cost (it will cost) / you will cost (you will cost) / we will cost (we will cost) / they will cost (they will cost)

13.6d **TO FLY** (to fly) / He promised to fly more. (He promised to fly more.)

Fly. (Fly.) / Please fly home. (Please fly home.)

flying (flying) / He is flying home. (He is flying home.)

flown (**flown**) / it is **flown** (it is **flown**) / it was **flown** (it was **flown**) / it will be **flown** (it will be **flown**)

I fly (I fly))	I flew (I flew)	I will fly (I will fly)
he flies (he flies)	he flew (he flew)	he will fly (he will fly)
she flies (she flies)	she flew (she flew)	she will fly (she will fly)
it flies (it flies)	it flew (it flew)	it will fly (it will fly)
you fly (you fly)	you flew (you flew)	you will fly (you will fly)
we fly (we fly)	we flew (we flew)	we will fly (we will fly)
they fly (they fly)	they flew (they flew)	they will fly (they will fly)

13.7 **I will ask, "Do you see the big crowd?"** You will answer, "Yes, but the one we saw yesterday was bigger." I will ask again, "Do you see the big crowd?" You will answer, "Yes, but the one we will see tomorrow will be the biggest."



ls13j.mp3



ls13jb.mp3

13.7a Do you see the big crowd?

(Yes, but the one we saw yesterday was bigger.) Yes, but the one we saw yesterday was bigger. (Yes, but the one we saw yesterday was bigger.)

Do you see the big crowd?

(Yes, but the one we will see tomorrow will be the biggest.) Yes, but the one we will see tomorrow will be the biggest. (Yes, but the one we will see tomorrow will be the biggest.)

13.7b Did he do the hard lesson?

(Yes, but the one he did yesterday was harder.) Yes, but the one he did yesterday was harder. (Yes, but the one he did yesterday was harder.)

Did he do the hard lesson?

(Yes, but the one he will do tomorrow will be the hardest.) Yes, but the one he will do tomorrow will be the hardest. (Yes, but the one he will do tomorrow will be the hardest.)

13.7c Did they put the tall people together?

(Yes, but the ones they put together yesterday were taller.) Yes, but the ones they put together yesterday were taller. (Yes, but the ones they put together yesterday were taller.)

Did they put the tall people together?

(Yes, but the ones they will put together tomorrow will be the tallest.) Yes, but the ones they will put together tomorrow will be the tallest. (Yes, but the ones they will put together tomorrow will be the tallest.)

13.7d Did we ask the old people first?

(Yes, but the ones we asked yesterday were older.) Yes, but the ones we asked yesterday were older. (Yes, but the ones we asked yesterday were older.)

Did we ask the old people first?

(Yes, but the ones we will ask tomorrow will be the oldest.) Yes, but the ones we will ask tomorrow will be the oldest. (Yes, but the ones we will ask tomorrow will be the oldest.)

13.7e Did you talk to the noisy children?

(Yes, but the ones we talked to yesterday were noisier.) Yes, but the ones we talked to yesterday were noisier. (Yes, but the ones we talked to yesterday were noisier.)

Did you talk to the noisy children?

(Yes, but the ones we will talk to tomorrow will be the noisiest.) Yes, but the ones we will talk to tomorrow will be the noisiest. (Yes, but the ones we will talk to tomorrow will be the noisiest.)

13.7f Did you teach the short lesson?

(Yes, but the one I taught yesterday was shorter.) Yes, but the one I taught yesterday was shorter. (Yes, but the one I taught yesterday was shorter.)

Did you teach the short lesson?

(Yes, but the one I will teach tomorrow will be the shortest.) Yes, but the one I will teach tomorrow will be the shortest. (Yes, but the one I will teach tomorrow will be the shortest.)

13.7g Did she hear the good message?

(Yes, but the one she heard yesterday was better.) Yes, but the one she heard yesterday was better. (Yes, but the one she heard yesterday was better.)

Did she hear the good message?

(Yes, but the one she will hear tomorrow will be the best.) Yes, but the one she will hear tomorrow will be the best. (Yes, but the one she will hear tomorrow will be the best.)

13.7h Did she eat the bad meal?

(Yes, but the one she ate yesterday was worse.) Yes, but the one she ate yesterday was worse. (Yes, but the one she ate yesterday was worse.)

Did she eat the bad meal?

(Yes, but the one she will eat tomorrow will be the worst.) Yes, but the one she will eat tomorrow will be the worst. (Yes, but the one she will eat tomorrow will be the worst.)

13.8 **I will say, "Is she the most famous person here?"** You will answer, "I don't think so. But she is more famous than most of the others."



ls13k.mp3



ls13kb.mp3

13.8a Is she the most famous person here?

(I don't think so. But she is more famous than most of the others.) I don't think so. But she is more famous than most of the others. (I don't think so. But she is more famous than most of the others.)

13.8b Was he the most jealous person here?

(I don't think so. But he was more jealous than most of the others.) I don't think so. But he was more jealous than most of the others. (I don't think so. But he was more jealous than most of the others.)

13.8c Will they be the most peaceful people here?

(I don't think so. But they will be more peaceful than most of the others.) I don't think so. But they will be more peaceful than most of the others. (I don't think so. But they will be more peaceful than most of the others.)

13.8d Are we the most powerful people here?

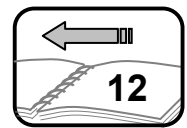
(I don't think so. But we are more powerful than most of the others.) I don't think so. But we are more powerful than most of the others. (I don't think so. But we are more powerful than most of the others.)

13.8e Will she be the most deceitful person here?

(I don't think so. But she will be more deceitful than most of the others.) I don't think so. But she will be more deceitful than most of the others. (I don't think so. But she will be more deceitful than most of the others.)


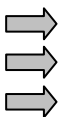

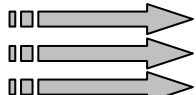
13.8f Were they the most responsible people here?

(I don't think so. But they were more responsible than most of the others.) I
don't think so. But they were more responsible than most of the others. (I
don't think so. But they were more responsible than most of the others.)



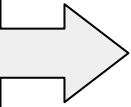
"THIS," "THAT," "THESE" AND "THOSE"

13.3

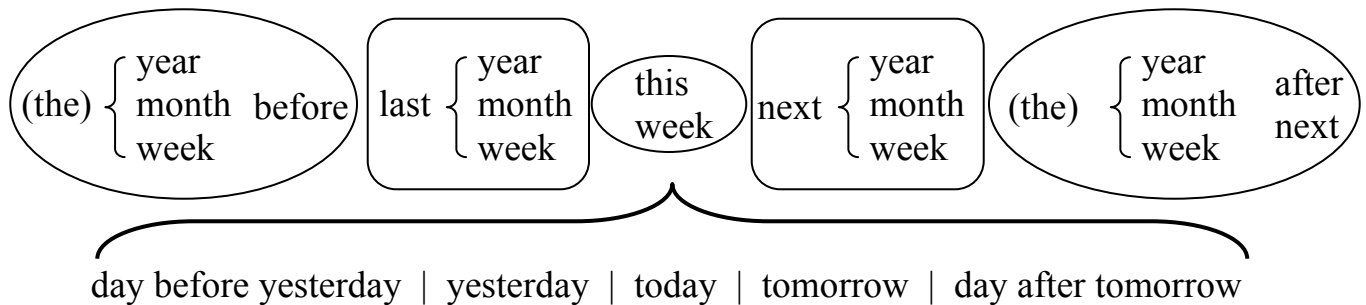
" This " is one thing close by.	John needs this  book.
" These " are two or more things close by.	He needs these  books.
" That " is one thing farther away.	He needs that  book.
" Those " are two or more things farther away.	He needs those  books.

USING "DO" TO EMPHASIZE

13.5

Normal emphasis	Stronger emphasis
Do you speak English? Yes, I speak English.	You don't speak English, do you? Yes, I do speak English.
Does he speak English? Yes, he speaks English.	He doesn't speak English, does he? Yes, he does speak English.
<div> <p>Note: a negative answer uses a stronger emphasis</p>  </div>	Do you speak English? No, I don't speak English.
	Does he speak English? No, he doesn't speak English.
	Did you speak English? No, I didn't speak English.
	Did they speak English? No, they didn't speak English.

WORDS DESCRIBING TIME



(The) year before last was very cold.

Last year was warmer.

Last month was cooler.

Last week was nice.

(The) day before yesterday was Monday.

Yesterday was Tuesday.

Today is Wednesday.

Tomorrow will be Thursday.

(The) day after tomorrow will be Friday.

Next week will be windy.

Next month will be hot.

Next year should be warm.

(The) year after next may also be warm.

USING "YOU" IN ENGLISH

1 person	I, me, you, she, her, he, him, it
2 or more people	we, us, you, they, them

The sentence indicates the number of people.

John, will you come with me? = (I want only John but not Mary to come with me.)

John and Mary, will you come with me? = (I want both John and Mary to come with me.)

Or, Will both of you come with me? = (I want both John and Mary to come with me.)

1 person	my, mine, your, yours, her, hers, his, its
2 or more people	our, ours, your, yours, their, theirs

The sentence indicates the number of people.

John, this is your coat. I think it is yours. = (This coat belongs to John, not to Mary.)

John and Mary, these are your books. These books are yours. = (These books belong to both John and Mary.)

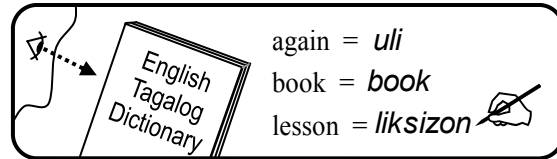
Or, These books belong to both of you.

OLD ENGLISH FORMS OF "YOU"

1 person	I, me, thee , thou , she, her, he, him, it
2 or more people	we, us, thee , ye , they, them
1 person	my, mine, thy , thine , her, hers, his, its
2 or more people	our, ours, thy , thine , their, theirs

thysel = yourself (1 person)

LESSON 13 VOCABULARY



acceptance	presentation	to handle
argument	proposal	to matter
bribe	province	to neglect
convert	quarrel	to note
disciple	refutation	to oppose
farther	these	to please
finances	those	to present
friend	to accept	to propose
friendly, friendlier,	to argue	to quarrel
friendliest	to be	to refute
funds	to be converted	to steal
Greek	to be opposed	to stir
handle	to be pleased	tomorrow
last	to be wise	widow
neglect	to bribe	windy
normal	to describe	wisdom
opposition	to emphasize	yesterday
pleasure, pleasant	to fly	

Expressions

Some time later there was a quarrel between the people. (6:1)

They claimed that their widows were being neglected in the daily distribution of funds. (6:1)

It is not right for us to neglect teaching **in order to** handle finances. (6:2)

It is not right for us to neglect teaching in order to **handle finances**. (6:2)

We will **put** them **in charge** of this matter. (6:3)

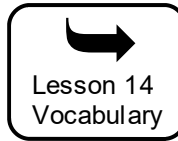
He was **opposed by** some men who were members of the group. (6:9)

In this way they stirred up the people. (6:12)

Then they **brought in some men** to tell lies about him. (6:13)

All those sitting in the Council **fixed their eyes on** him. (6:15)

LESSON 14: EXERCISE LESSON




ls14a.mp3


ls14ab.mp3

14.1 Lesson Text 7:54-8:3 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

As the members of the Council listened to Stephen, (As the members of the Council listened to Stephen,) / they became furious and ground their teeth at him in anger. (they became furious and ground their teeth at him in anger.) / As the members of the Council listened to Stephen, they became furious and ground their teeth at him in anger. (As the members of the Council listened to Stephen, they became furious and ground their teeth at him in anger.)

But Stephen, (But Stephen,) / full of the Holy Spirit, (full of the Holy Spirit,) / looked up to heaven and saw God's glory (looked up to heaven and saw God's glory) / and Jesus standing at the right side of God. (and Jesus standing at the right side of God.) / But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit, looked up to heaven and saw God's glory and Jesus standing at the right side of God. (But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit, looked up to heaven and saw God's glory and Jesus standing at the right side of God.) / Look, he said. (Look, he said.) / I see heaven opened (I see heaven opened) / and the Son of Man (and the Son of Man) / standing at the right side of God. (standing at the right side of God.) / Look, he said. I see heaven opened and the Son of Man standing at the right side of God. (Look, he said. I see heaven opened and the Son of Man standing at the right side of God.)

With a loud cry (With a loud cry) / the Council members covered their ears with their hands. (the Council members covered their ears with their hands.) / With a loud cry the Council members covered their ears with their hands. (With a loud cry the Council members covered their ears with their

hands.) / Then they all rushed at him at once, (Then they all rushed at him at once,) / threw him out of the city, (threw him out of the city,) / and stoned him. (and stoned him.) / Then they all rushed at him at once, threw him out of the city, and stoned him. (Then they all rushed at him at once, threw him out of the city, and stoned him.)

The witnesses left their cloaks (The witnesses left their cloaks) / in the care of a young man named Saul. (in the care of a young man named Saul.) / The witnesses left their cloaks in the care of a young man named Saul. (The witnesses left their cloaks in the care of a young man named Saul.)

They kept on stoning Stephen (They kept on stoning Stephen) / as he called out to the Lord, (as he called out to the Lord,) / Lord Jesus, receive my spirit. (Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.) / They kept on stoning Stephen as he called out to the Lord, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit. (They kept on stoning Stephen as he called out to the Lord, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.)



ls14b.mp3



ls14bb.mp3

He knelt down (He knelt down) / and cried out in a loud voice, (and cried out in a loud voice,) / Lord, do not remember this sin against them. (Lord, do not remember this sin against them.) / He knelt down and cried out in a loud voice, Lord, do not remember this sin against them. (He knelt down and cried out in a loud voice, Lord, do not remember this sin against them.) / He said this and died. (He said this and died.)

That very day (That very day) / the church in Jerusalem (the church in Jerusalem) / began to suffer cruel persecution. (began to suffer cruel persecution.) / That very day the church in Jerusalem began to suffer cruel

persecution. (That very day the church in Jerusalem began to suffer cruel persecution.) / All the believers, (All the believers,) / except the apostles, (except the apostles,) / were scattered throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria. (were scattered throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria.) / All the believers, except the apostles, were scattered throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria. (All the believers, except the apostles, were scattered throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria.)

Some devout men buried Stephen, (Some devout men buried Stephen,) / mourning for him with loud cries. (mourning for him with loud cries.) / Some devout men buried Stephen, mourning for him with loud cries. (Some devout men buried Stephen, mourning for him with loud cries.)

But Saul tried to destroy the church. (But Saul tried to destroy the church.) / Going from house to house, (going from house to house,) / he dragged out the believers, (he dragged out the believers,) / both men and women, (both men and women,) / and threw them into jail. (and threw them into jail.) / Going from house to house, he dragged out the believers, both men and women, and threw them into jail. (Going from house to house, he dragged out the believers, both men and women, and threw them into jail.)

(Lesson Text: Today's English Version, Copyright ©1992 by the **ABS** Used by permission. All rights reserved.)
Go to www.ethnicharvest.org/books.html to read the Lesson Text in your language.

LESSON 14: EXERCISE LESSON

14.2 Repeat each sentence.

14.2a Complete the following sentences with "with them."

I **am** furious (I **am** furious with them.) / I **was** furious (I **was** furious with them.) / I will be furious (I will be furious with them.)

He **is** furious (He **is** furious with them.) / He **was** furious (He **was** furious with them.) / He will be furious (He will be furious with them.)

You **are** furious (You **are** furious with them.) / You **were** furious (You **were** furious with them.) / You will be furious (You will be furious with them.)

— Complete the following sentences with "at that suggestion."

We **are** furious (We **are** furious at that suggestion.) / We **were** furious (We **were** furious at that suggestion.) / We **will** be furious (We **will** be furious at that suggestion.)

They **are** furious (They **are** furious at that suggestion.) / They **were** furious (They **were** furious at that suggestion.) / They will be furious (They will be furious at that suggestion.)

14.2b Complete the following sentences with "my ears."

I never cover (I never cover my ears.) / I never covered (I never covered my ears.) / I will never cover (I will never cover my ears.)

— Complete the following sentences with "her arms."

She rarely covers (She rarely covers her arms.) / She rarely covered (She rarely covered her arms.) / She will rarely cover (She will rarely cover her arms.)

— Complete the following sentences with "your eyes."

You infrequently cover (You infrequently cover your eyes.) / You infrequently covered (You infrequently covered your eyes.) / You will infrequently cover (You will infrequently cover your eyes.)

— Complete the following sentences with "our eyes."

We seldom cover (We seldom cover our eyes.) / We seldom covered (We seldom covered our eyes.) / We will seldom cover (We will seldom cover our eyes.)

— Complete the following sentences with "their ears."

They occasionally cover (They occasionally cover their ears.) / They occasionally covered (They occasionally covered their ears.) / They will occasionally cover (They will occasionally cover their ears.)



14.2c Complete the following sentences with "to stop them from quarreling."

ls14d.mp3

I sometimes try (I sometimes try to stop them from quarreling.) / He sometimes tries (He sometimes tries to stop them from quarreling.) / You sometimes try (You sometimes try to stop them from quarreling.) / We sometimes try (We sometimes try to stop them from quarreling.) / They sometimes try (They sometimes try to stop them from quarreling.)



ls14db.mp3

— Complete the following sentences with "to reduce the noise."

I often tried (I often tried to reduce the noise.) / She often tried (She often tried to reduce the noise.) / You often tried (You often tried to reduce the noise.) / We often tried (We often tried to reduce the noise.) / They often tried (They often tried to reduce the noise.)

— Complete the following sentences with "to study more."

I will frequently try (I will frequently try to study more.) / He will frequently try (He will frequently try to study more.) / You will frequently try (You will frequently try to study more.) / We will frequently try (We will frequently

try to study more.) / They will frequently try (They will frequently try to study more.)

14.2d Complete the following sentences with "their names."

I usually remember (I usually remember their names.) / I usually remembered (I usually remembered their names.) / I will usually remember (I will usually remember their names.)

She never remembers (She never remembers their names.) / She never remembered (She never remembered their names.) / She will never remember (She will never remember their names.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the instructions."

You sometimes remember (You sometimes remember the instructions.) /
You sometimes remembered (You sometimes remembered the instructions.)
/ You will sometimes remember (You will sometimes remember the instructions.)

We seldom remember (We seldom remember the instructions.) / We seldom remembered (We seldom remembered the instructions.) / We will seldom remember (We will seldom remember the instructions.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the others."

They always remember (They always remember the others.) / They always remembered (They always remembered the others.) / They will always remember (They will always remember the others.)

14.2e Complete the following sentences with "my friends."

I often call (I often call my friends.) / I often called (I often called my friends.) / I will often call (I will often call my friends.)

She frequently calls (She frequently calls my friends.) / She frequently called (She frequently called my friends.) / She will frequently call (She will frequently call my friends.)

— Complete the following sentences with "my father."

You rarely call (You rarely call my father.) / You rarely called (You rarely called my father.) / You will rarely call (You will rarely call my father.)

We never call (We never call my father.) / We never called (We never called my father.) / We will never call (We will never call my father.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the others."

They infrequently call (They infrequently call the others.) / They
infrequently called (They infrequently called the others.) / They will
infrequently call (They will infrequently call the others.)

14.3 Repeat each sentence.

14.3a Everyone knows that. (Everyone knows that.)

That is known by everyone. (That is known by everyone.)

14.3b We promised the work to those men. (We promised the work to those men.)

The work was promised to those men. (The work was promised to those
men.)

14.3c Did she already spend her money? (Did she already spend her money?)

Was her money already spent? (Was her money already spent?)

14.3d Tomorrow we will read this book. (Tomorrow we will read this book.)

Tomorrow this book will be read. (Tomorrow this book will be read.)

14.3e We will take the younger children. (We will take the younger children.)

The younger children will be taken. (The younger children will be taken.)

14.3f Did the leader give a clear message? (Did the leader give a clear message?)

Was the leader's message clear? (Was the leader's message clear?)

14.3g The man started his car early. (The man started his car early.)

The man's car was started early. (The man's car was started early.)

14.3h We called the children by name. (We called the children by name.)

The children were called by name. (The children were called by name.)

14.3i They chose the shortest book. (They chose the shortest book.)

The shortest book was chosen. (The shortest book was chosen.)

14.4 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

14.4a TO CRY (to cry) / He promised not to cry. (He promised not to cry.)

Cry. (Cry.) / Please don't cry. (Please don't cry.)

crying (crying) / He is not crying. (He is not crying.)

~~cried~~: It is **cried** is infrequently or never used.

I cry (I cry)	I cried (I cried)	I will cry (I will cry)
he cries (he cries)	he cried (he cried)	he will cry (he will cry)
she cries (she cries))	she cried (she cried)	she will cry (she will cry)
it cries (it cries)	it cried (it cried)	it will cry (it will cry)
you cry (you cry)	you cried (you cried)	you will cry (you will cry)
we cry (we cry)	we cried (we cried)	we will cry (we will cry)
they cry (they cry)	they cried (they cried)	they will cry (they will cry)

14.4b TO MOURN (to mourn) / They came to mourn his death. (They came to mourn his death.)

Mourn. (Mourn.) / Please don't mourn. (Please don't mourn.)



ls14f.mp3



ls14fb.mp3

mourning (mourning) / He is mourning her death. (He is mourning her death.)

mourned (mourned) / he is mourned (he is mourned) / she was mourned (she was mourned) / they will be mourned (they will be mourned)

- I mourn (I mourn) / he mourns (he mourns) / she mourns (she mourns) / it mourns (it mourns) / you mourn (you mourn) / we mourn (we mourn) / they mourn (they mourn)
- I mourned (I mourned) / he mourned (he mourned) / she mourned (she mourned) / it mourned (it mourned) / you mourned (you mourned) / we mourned (we mourned) / they mourned (they mourned)
- I will mourn (I will mourn) / he will mourn (he will mourn) / she will mourn (she will mourn) / it will mourn (it will mourn) / you will mourn (you will mourn) / we will mourn (we will mourn) / they will mourn (they will mourn)

14.4c TO RUSH (to rush) / He promised not to rush. (He promised not to rush.)

Rush. (Rush.) / Please don't rush. (Please don't rush.)

rushing (rushing) / He is not rushing. (He is not rushing.)

rushed (rushed) / it is rushed (it is rushed) / it was rushed (it was rushed) / it will be rushed (it will be rushed)

I rush (I rush)	I rushed (I rushed)	I will rush (I will rush)
he rushes (he rushes)	he rushed (he rushed)	he will rush (he will rush)
she rushes (she rushes)	she rushed (she rushed)	she will rush (she will rush)
it rushes (it rushes)	it rushed (it rushed)	it will rush (it will rush)
you rush (you rush)	you rushed (you rushed)	you will rush (you will rush)
we rush (we rush)	we rushed (we rushed)	we will rush (we will rush)
they rush (they rush)	they rushed (they rushed)	they will rush (they will rush)

14.4d TO DRAG (to drag) / He tried to drag it. (He tried to drag it.)

Drag. (Drag.) / Please don't drag it. (Please don't drag it.)

dragging (dragging) / He is dragging it. (He is dragging it.)

dragged (dragged) / it is dragged (it is dragged) / it was dragged (it was dragged) / it will be dragged (it will be dragged)

- I drag (I drag) / he drags (he drags) / she drags (she drags) / it drags (it drags) / you drag (you drag) / we drag (we drag) / they drag (they drag)
- I dragged (I dragged) / he dragged (he dragged) / she dragged (she dragged) / it dragged (it dragged) / you dragged (you dragged) / we dragged (we dragged) / they dragged (they dragged)
- I will drag (I will drag) / he will drag (he will drag) / she will drag (she will drag) / it will drag (it will drag) / you will drag (you will drag) / we will drag (we will drag) / they will drag (they will drag)

14.5 **I will say, "I walked near _____."** You will answer, "I walked near the house." I will say, "We walked toward _____." You will answer, "We walked toward the house."



ls14g.mp3



ls14gb.mp

14.5a I walked near _____.

(I walked near the house.) I walked near the house. (I walked near the house.)

14.5b We walked toward _____.

(We walked toward the house.) We walked toward the house. (We walked toward the house.)

14.5c They walked away from _____.

(They walked away from the house.) They walked away from the house.

(They walked away from the house.)

14.5d She stood inside _____.

(She stood inside the house.) She stood inside the house. (She stood inside the house.)

14.5e They stood beside _____.

(They stood beside the house.) They stood beside the house. (They stood beside the house.)

14.5f We stood in front of _____.

(We stood in front of the house.) We stood in front of the house. (We stood in front of the house.)

14.5g They met outside _____.

(They met outside the house.) They met outside the house. (They met outside the house.)

14.5h We met close to _____.

(We met close to the house.) We met close to the house. (We met close to the house.)

14.5i They met behind _____.

(They met behind the house.) They met behind the house. (They met behind the house.)

14.5j It ran under _____.

(It ran under the house.) It ran under the house. (It ran under the house.)

14.5k I ran around _____.

(I ran around the house.) I ran around the house. (I ran around the house.)

14.5l They ran through _____.

(They ran through the house.) They ran through the house. (They ran through the house.)

14.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).

14.6a **TO WEAR** (to wear) / He tried to wear it again. (He tried to wear it again.)

Wear. (Wear.) / Please don't wear it again. (Please don't wear it again.)

wearing (wearing) / He is wearing it again. (He is wearing it again.)

worn (worn) / it is **worn** (it is **worn**) / it was **worn** (it was **worn**) / it will be **worn** (it will be **worn**)

- I wear (I wear) / he wears (he wears) / she wears (she wears) / it wears (it wears) / you wear (you wear) / we wear (we wear) / they wear (they wear)
- I **wore** (I **wore**) / he **wore** (he **wore**) / she **wore** (she **wore**) / it **wore** (it **wore**) / you **wore** (you **wore**) / we **wore** (we **wore**) / they **wore** (they **wore**)
- I will wear (I will wear) / he will wear (he will wear) / she will wear (she will wear) / it will wear (it will wear) / you will wear (you will wear) / we will wear (we will wear) / they will wear (they will wear)

14.6b **TO GRIND** (to grind) / He wanted to grind more grain. (He wanted to grind more grain.)

Grind. (Grind.) / Please don't grind more grain. (Please don't grind more grain.)

grinding (grinding) / He is not grinding any more. (He is not grinding any more.)

ground (ground) / it is **ground** (it is **ground**) / it was **ground** (it was **ground**) / it will be **ground** (it will be **ground**)

I grind (I grind)	I ground (I ground)	I will grind (I will grind)
he grinds (he grinds)	he ground (he ground)	he will grind (he will grind)
she grinds (she grinds)	she ground (she ground)	she will grind (she will grind)
it grinds (it grinds)	it ground (it ground)	it will grind (it will grind)
you grind (you grind)	you ground (you ground)	you will grind (you will grind)
we grind (we grind)	we ground (we ground)	we will grind (we will grind)
they grind (they grind)	they ground (they ground)	they will grind (they will grind)

14.6c **TO KNEEL** (to kneel) / He wanted to kneel. (He wanted to kneel.)

Kneel. (Kneel.) / Please don't kneel. (Please don't kneel.)

kneeling (kneeling) / He is kneeling. (He is kneeling.)

~~**knelt**~~: *It is **knelt** is infrequently or never used.*

- I kneel (I kneel) / he kneels (he kneels) / she kneels (she kneels) / it kneels (it kneels) / you kneel (you kneel) / we kneel (we kneel) / they kneel (they kneel)
- I **knelt** (I **knelt**) / he **knelt** (he **knelt**) / she **knelt** (she **knelt**) / it **knelt** (it **knelt**) / you **knelt** (you **knelt**) / we **knelt** (we **knelt**) / they **knelt** (they **knelt**)

- I will kneel (I will kneel) / he will kneel (he will kneel) / she will kneel (she will kneel) / it will kneel (it will kneel) / you will kneel (you will kneel) / we will kneel (we will kneel) / they will kneel (they will kneel)

14.6d **TO BLOW** (to blow) / He wanted to blow on it. (He wanted to blow on it.)

Blow. (Blow.) / Please don't blow on it. (Please don't blow on it.)

blowing (blowing) / He is not blowing on it now. (He is not blowing on it now.)

blown (blown) / it is **blown** (it is **blown**) / it was **blown** (it was **blown**) / it will be **blown** (it will be **blown**)

I blow (I blow)	I blew (I blew)	I will blow (I will blow)
he blows (he blows)	he blew (he blew)	he will blow (he will blow)
she blows (she blows)	she blew (she blew)	she will blow (she will blow)
it blows (it blows)	it blew (it blew)	it will blow (it will blow)
you blow (you blow)	you blew (you blew)	you will blow (you will blow)
we blow (we blow)	we blew (we blew)	we will blow (we will blow)
they blow (they blow)	they blew (they blew)	they will blow (they will blow)



ls14i.mp3

14.6e **TO EAT** (to eat) / He tried to eat it. (He tried to eat it.)

Eat. (Eat.) / Please don't eat it. (Please don't eat it.)

eating (eating) / He is eating it. (He is eating it.)

eaten (eaten) / it is **eaten** (it is **eaten**) / it was **eaten** (it was **eaten**) / it will be **eaten** (it will be **eaten**)

- I eat (I eat) / he eats (he eats) / she eats (she eats) / it eats (it eats) / you eat (you eat) / we eat (we eat) / they eat (they eat)
- I **ate** (I **ate**) / he **ate** (he **ate**) / she **ate** (she **ate**) / it **ate** (it **ate**) / you **ate** (you **ate**) / we **ate** (we **ate**) / they **ate** (they **ate**)



ls14ib.mp3

- I will eat (I will eat) / he will eat (he will eat) / she will eat (she will eat) / it will eat (it will eat) / you will eat (you will eat) / we will eat (we will eat) / they will eat (they will eat)

14.6f **TO SHOOT** (to shoot) / He tried to shoot it. (He tried to shoot it.)

Shoot. (Shoot.) / Please don't shoot it. (Please don't shoot it.)

shooting (shooting) / He is not shooting it. (He is not shooting it.)

shot (shot) / it is **shot** (it is **shot**) / it was **shot** (it was **shot**) / it will be **shot** (it will be **shot**)

I shoot (I shoot)	I shot (I shot)	I will shoot (I will shoot)
he shoots (he shoots)	he shot (he shot)	he will shoot (he will shoot)
she shoots (she shoots)	she shot (she shot)	she will shoot (she will shoot)
it shoots (it shoots)	it shot (it shot)	it will shoot (it will shoot)
you shoot (you shoot)	you shot (you shot)	you will shoot (you will shoot)
we shoot (we shoot)	we shot (we shot)	we will shoot (we will shoot)
they shoot (they shoot)	they shot (they shot)	they will shoot (they will shoot)

14.7 **Repeat each sentence.**



ls14j.mp3

14.7a Everyone sold a house. (Everyone sold a house.)

Everyone in this group owned a house. (Everyone in this group owned a house.)

Everyone sold a house. (Everyone sold a house.)



ls14jb.mp3

14.7b Everyone who owned a house sold it. (Everyone who owned a house sold it.)

Some in this group owned a house. (Some in this group owned a house.)

Some did not own a house. (Some did not own a house.)

Those who owned a house sold it. (Those who owned a house sold it.)

14.7c Every car was repaired. (Every car was repaired.)

Every car in this group needed to be repaired. (Every car in this group needed to be repaired.)

Every car was repaired. (Every car was repaired.)

14.7d Every car that needed to be repaired was fixed. (Every car that needed to be repaired was fixed.)

Some cars in this group needed to be repaired. (Some cars in this group needed to be repaired.)

Some cars did not need to be repaired. (Some cars did not need to be repaired.)

Those cars that needed it were repaired. (Those cars that needed it were repaired.)

14.7e Every member was sick and was given help. (Every member was sick and was given help.)

Every member in this group was sick. (Every member in this group was sick.)

Every member was given help. (Every member was given help.)

14.7f Every member who was sick was given help. (Every member who was sick was given help.)

Some members in this group were sick. (Some members in this group were sick.)

Some members were not sick. (Some members were not sick.)

The members who were sick were given help. (The members who were sick were given help.)

14.7g Every person on the list was called. (Every person on the list was called.)

There were many people's names on the list. (There were many people's names on the list.)

Every person was called. (Every person was called.)

14.7h Every person with a name that began with the letter "M" was called. (Every person with a name that began with the letter "M" was called.)

There were many people's names on the list. (There were many people's names on the list.)

Some of the names began with the letter "M." (Some of the names began with the letter "M.")

Only those people with names that began with the letter "M" were called.

(Only those people with names that began with the letter "M" were called.)

14.8 **Repeat the sentence adding the word I give you.** I will say, "We wait for the children by the bus stop. Then I will say, "always." You will answer, "We always wait for the children by the bus stop."



ls14k.mp3



ls14kb.mp

14.8a We wait for the children by the bus stop. **always**

(We always wait for the children by the bus stop.) We always wait for the children by the bus stop. (We always wait for the children by the bus stop.)

14.8b They come by 3 o'clock. **usually**

(They usually come by 3 o'clock.) They usually come by 3 o'clock. (They usually come by 3 o'clock.)

14.8c We see other children waiting there. **frequently**
(We frequently see other children waiting there.) We frequently see other children waiting there. (We frequently see other children waiting there.)

14.8d We talk with the other children. **often**
(We often talk with the other children.) We often talk with the other children. (We often talk with the other children.)

14.8e We walk together. **sometimes**
(We sometimes walk together.) We sometimes walk together. (We sometimes walk together.)

14.8f We leave with the others. **occasionally**
(We occasionally leave with the others.) We occasionally leave with the others. (We occasionally leave with the others.)

14.8g The children are late. **seldom**
(The children are seldom late.) The children are seldom late. (The children are seldom late.)

14.8h We need to wait more than 10 minutes. **infrequently**
(We infrequently need to wait more than 10 minutes.) We infrequently need to wait more than 10 minutes. (We infrequently need to wait more than 10 minutes.)

14.8i We wait more than 15 minutes for them. **rarely**
(We rarely wait more than 15 minutes for them.) We rarely wait more than
15 minutes for them. (We rarely wait more than 15 minutes for them.)

14.8j We leave before all of them arrive. **never**
(We never leave before all of them arrive.) We never leave before all of
them arrive. (We never leave before all of them arrive.)



ls14l.mp3

14.9 **Repeat each sentence.**



ls14lb.mp3

14.9a How high is that mountain? (How high is that mountain?)
Its height is over 11,000 feet. (Its height is over 11,000 feet.)

14.9b How wide is their house? (How wide is their house?)
Its width is almost 50 feet. (Its width is almost 50 feet.)

14.9c How deep is the water? (How deep is the water?)
Its depth is about 100 feet. (Its depth is about 100 feet.)

14.9d How long is this bed? (How long is this bed?)
Its length is about six feet. (Its length is about six feet.)

14.9e How thick is that book? (How thick is that book?)
Its thickness is greater than any of the others. (Its thickness is greater than
any of the others.)

14.9f How strong is that boy? (How strong is that boy?)

His strength is very great. (His strength is very great.)

14.9g How powerful is this car? (How powerful is this car?)

Its power is greater than that one over there. (Its power is greater than that one over there.)

14.9h How weak is that woman? (How weak is that woman?)

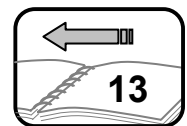
Her weakness is extreme. (Her weakness is extreme.)

14.9i How dark is it inside the house? (How dark is it inside the house?)

The darkness is more than we can stand. (The darkness is more than we can stand.)

14.9j How hot is the fire? (How hot is the fire?)

Its heat is very high. (Its heat is very high.)



DOING OR RECEIVING THE ACTION

14.3

When someone is doing the action.	When something is receiving the action.
Everyone knows that.	That is known by everyone.
We promised the work to those men.	The work was promised to those men .
Did she already spend her money?	Was her money already spent?
Tomorrow we will read this book.	Tomorrow this book will be read.
We will take the younger children.	The younger children will be taken.
Did the leader give a clear message?	Was the leader's message clear?
The man started his car early.	The man's car was started early.
We called the children by name.	The children were called by name.
They chose the shortest book.	The shortest book was chosen.

USE THESE WORDS CORRECTLY

How high is that mountain?	Its height is over 11,000 feet.
How wide is their house?	Its width is almost 50 feet.
How deep is the water?	Its depth is about 100 feet.
How long is this bed?	Its length is about six feet.
How thick is that book?	Its thickness is greater than any of the others.
How strong is that boy?	His strength is very great.
How powerful is this car?	Its power is greater than that one over there.
How weak is that woman?	Her weakness is extreme.
How dark is it inside the house?	The darkness is more than we can stand.
How hot is the fire?	Its heat is very high.

WHEN SOMETHING HAPPENS

14.8

14.2b

14.2c

We **always** wait for the children by the bust stop.

always

They **usually** come by 3 o'clock.

usually

We **frequently** see other children waiting there.

frequently

We **often** talk with the other children.

often

We **sometimes** walk together.

sometimes

occasionally

We **occasionally** leave with the others.

seldom

The children are **seldom** late.

infrequently

We **infrequently** need to wait more than 10 minutes.

rarely

We **rarely** wait more than 15 minutes for them.

never

We **never** leave before all of them arrive.

"WHO" AND "THAT"

14.7

Everyone sold a house.	
Everyone in this group owned a house.	Everyone in this group sold a house.

Everyone who owned a house sold it.	
Some in this group owned a house.	Those who owned a house sold it.
Some in this group did not own a house.	

Every car was repaired.	
Every car in this group needed to be repaired.	Every car in this group was repaired.

Every car that needed to be repaired was fixed.	
Some cars in this group needed to be repaired.	Those cars that needed it were repaired.
Some cars in this group did not need to be repaired.	

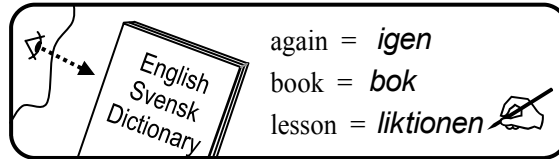
Every member was sick and was given help.	
Every member in this group was sick.	Every member in this group was given help.

Every member who was sick was given help.	
Some members in this group were sick.	The members in this group who were sick were given help.
Some members in this group were not sick.	

Every person on the list was called.	
There were many people's names on the list.	Every person was called.

Every person with a name that began with the letter "M" was called.	
There were many people's names on the list.	Only those people with names that began with the letter "M" were called.
Some of the names began with the letter "M."	

LESSON 14 VOCABULARY



anger	seldom	to grind
cloak	sometimes	to kneel
correct, correctly	son	to mourn
cry	spirit	to remember
dark, darkness	strong, strength	to repair
deep, depth	thick, thickness	to rush
devout	throughout	to shoot
ear	to be	to stone
high, height	to be correct	to try
hot, heat	to be furious	to wear
in the care of	to be scattered	tooth, teeth
infrequently	to call	usually
long, length	to call out	weak, weakness
member	to cover	who
occasionally	to cry	wide, width
often	to cry out	
persecution	to drag	
rarely	to eat	

Expressions

As they listened to him, **they became furious**. (7:54)

They became furious and **ground their teeth** at him in anger. (7:54)

With a loud cry they covered their ears with their hands. (7:57)

With a loud cry **they covered their ears** with their hands. (7:57)

They rushed at him and threw him out of the city. (7:57)

They rushed at him and **threw him out** of the city. (7:57)

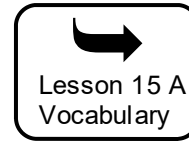
They left their cloaks **in the care of** a young man named Saul. (7:58)

Do not remember this against them. (7:60)

They were scattered throughout the provinces. (8:1)

Going **from house to house**, he threw them into jail. (8:3)

LESSON 15-A: PRONUNCIATION LESSON



ls15a.mp3



ls15ab.mp3

15.1-A Lesson Text 8:4 - 9:21 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

The believers who were scattered (The believers who were scattered) / went everywhere, preaching the message. (went everywhere, preaching the message.) / The believers who were scattered went everywhere, preaching the message. (The believers who were scattered went everywhere, preaching the message.) / Philip went to the principal city in Samaria (Philip went to the principal city in Samaria) / and preached the Messiah to the people there. (and preached the Messiah to the people there.) / Philip went to the principal city in Samaria and preached the Messiah to the people there. (Philip went to the principal city in Samaria and preached the Messiah to the people there.)

The crowds paid close attention to what Philip said, (The crowds paid close attention to what Philip said,) / as they listened to them and saw the miracles that he performed. (as they listened to them and saw the miracles that he performed.) / The crowds paid close attention to what Philip said, as they listened to them and saw the miracles that he performed. (The crowds paid close attention to what Philip said, as they listened to them and saw the miracles that he performed.) / Evil spirits came out from many people with a loud cry, (Evil spirits came out from many people with a loud cry,) / and many paralyzed and lame people were healed. (and many paralyzed and lame people were healed.) / Evil spirits came out from many people with a loud cry, and many paralyzed and lame people were healed. (Evil spirits came out from many people with a loud cry, and many paralyzed and lame people were healed.) / So there was great joy in that city. (So there was great joy in that city.)

A man named Simon lived there, (A man named Simon lived there,) / who for some time had astounded the Samaritans with his magic. (who for some time had astounded the Samaritans with his magic.) / A man named Simon lived there, who for some time had astounded the Samaritans with his magic. (A man named Simon lived there, who for some time had astounded the Samaritans with his magic.) / He claimed that he was someone great, (He claimed that he was someone great,) / and everyone in the city, (and everyone in the city,) / from all classes of society, (from all classes of society,) / paid close attention to him. (paid close attention to him.) / He claimed that he was someone great, and everyone in the city, from all classes of society, paid close attention to him. (He claimed that he was someone great, and everyone in the city, from all classes of society, paid close attention to him.)



ls15b.mp3

He is that power of God (He is that power of God) / known as The Great Power, they said. (known as The Great Power, they said.) / He is that power of God known as The Great Power, they said. (He is that power of God known as The Great Power, they said.) / They paid this attention to him (They paid this attention to him) / because for such a long time he had astonished them with his magic. (because for such a long time he had astonished them with his magic.) / They paid this attention to him because for such a long time he had astonished them with his magic. (They paid this attention to him because for such a long time he had astonished them with his magic.)



ls15bb.mp3

But when they believed Philip's message (But when they believed Philip's message) / about the good news of the Kingdom of God (about the good news of the Kingdom of God) / and about Jesus Christ, (and about Jesus Christ,) / they were baptized, (they were baptized,) / both men and women.

(both men and women.) / But when they believed Philip's message about the good news of the Kingdom of God and about Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women. (But when they believed Philip's message about the good news of the Kingdom of God and about Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.) / Simon himself also believed; (Simon himself also believed;) / and after being baptized, (and after being baptized,) / he stayed close to Philip. (he stayed close to Philip.) / Simon himself also believed; and after being baptized, he stayed close to Philip. (Simon himself also believed; and after being baptized, he stayed close to Philip.)

He was astounded (He was astounded) / when he saw the great wonders and miracles (when he saw the great wonders and miracles) / that were being performed. (that were being performed.) / He was astounded when he saw the great wonders and miracles that were being performed. (He was astounded when he saw the great wonders and miracles that were being performed.)

The apostles in Jerusalem (The apostles in Jerusalem) / heard that the people of Samaria had received the word of God, (heard that the people of Samaria had received the word of God,) / so they sent Peter and John to them. (so they sent Peter and John to them.) / The apostles in Jerusalem heard that the people of Samaria had received the word of God, so they sent Peter and John to them. (The apostles in Jerusalem heard that the people of Samaria had received the word of God, so they sent Peter and John to them.)

When they arrived, (When they arrived,) / they prayed for the believers (they prayed for the believers) / that they might receive the Holy Spirit. (that they might receive the Holy Spirit.) / When they arrived, they prayed



ls15c.mp3



ls15cb.mp3

for the believers that they might receive the Holy Spirit. (When they arrived, they prayed for the believers that they might receive the Holy Spirit.)

For the Holy Spirit (For the Holy Spirit) / had not yet come down on any of them; (had not yet come down on any of them;) / they had only been baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. (they had only been baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.) / For the Holy Spirit had not yet come down on any of them; they had only been baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. (For the Holy Spirit had not yet come down on any of them; they had only been baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.) / Then Peter and John (Then Peter and John) / placed their hands on them, (placed their hands on them,) / and they received the Holy Spirit. (and they received the Holy Spirit.) / Then Peter and John placed their hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit. (Then Peter and John placed their hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit.)

Simon saw (Simon saw) / that the Spirit had been given to the believers (that the Spirit had been given to the believers) / when the apostles placed their hands on them. (when the apostles placed their hands on them.) / Simon saw that the Spirit had been given to the believers when the apostles placed their hands on them. (Simon saw that the Spirit had been given to the believers when the apostles placed their hands on them.) / So he offered money to Peter and John, (So he offered money to Peter and John,) / and said, Give this power to me too, (and said, Give this power to me too,) / so that anyone I place my hands on (so that anyone I place my hands on) / will receive the Holy Spirit. (will receive the Holy Spirit.) / So he offered money to Peter and John, and said, Give this power to me too, so that anyone I place my hands on will receive the Holy Spirit. (So he

offered money to Peter and John, and said, Give this power to me too, so that anyone I place my hands on will receive the Holy Spirit.)

But Peter answered him, (But Peter answered him,) / May you and your money go to hell, (May you and your money go to hell,) / for thinking that you can buy God's gift with money. (for thinking that you can buy God's gift with money.) / But Peter answered him, May you and your money go to hell, for thinking that you can buy God's gift with money. (But Peter answered him, May you and your money go to hell, for thinking that you can buy God's gift with money.) / You have no part or share in our work, (You have no part or share in our work,) / because your heart is not right in God's sight. (because your heart is not right in God's sight.) / You have no part or share in our work, because your heart is not right in God's sight. (You have no part or share in our work, because your heart is not right in God's sight.)

Repent of this evil plan of yours, (Repent of this evil plan of yours,) / and pray to the Lord (and pray to the Lord) / that he will forgive you (that he will forgive you) / for thinking such a thing as this. (for thinking such a thing as this.) / Repent of this evil plan of yours, and pray to the Lord that he will forgive you for thinking such a thing as this. (Repent of this evil plan of yours, and pray to the Lord that he will forgive you for thinking such a thing as this.) / For I see that you are full of bitter envy (For I see that you are full of bitter envy) / and are a prisoner of sin. (and are a prisoner of sin.) / For I see that you are full of bitter envy and are a prisoner of sin. (For I see that you are full of bitter envy and are a prisoner of sin.)



ls15d.mp3



ls15db.mp3

Simon said to Peter and John, (Simon said to Peter and John,) / Please pray to the Lord for me, (Please pray to the Lord for me,) / so that none of these things you spoke of (so that none of these things you spoke of) / will happen to me. (will happen to me.) / Simon said to Peter and John, Please pray to the Lord for me, so that none of these things you spoke of will happen to me. (Simon said to Peter and John, Please pray to the Lord for me, so that none of these things you spoke of will happen to me.)

After they had given their testimony (After they had given their testimony) / and proclaimed the Lord's message, (and proclaimed the Lord's message,) / Peter and John went back to Jerusalem. (Peter and John went back to Jerusalem.) / After they had given their testimony and proclaimed the Lord's message, Peter and John went back to Jerusalem. (After they had given their testimony and proclaimed the Lord's message, Peter and John went back to Jerusalem.) / On their way (On their way) / they preached the Good News (they preached the Good News) / in many villages of Samaria. (in many villages of Samaria.) / On their way they preached the Good News in many villages of Samaria. (On their way they preached the Good News in many villages of Samaria.)

An angel of the Lord said to Philip, (An angel of the Lord said to Philip,) / Get ready and go south (Get ready and go south) / to the road that goes from Jerusalem to Gaza. (to the road that goes from Jerusalem to Gaza.) / An angel of the Lord said to Philip, Get ready and go south to the road that goes from Jerusalem to Gaza. (An angel of the Lord said to Philip, Get ready and go south to the road that goes from Jerusalem to Gaza.) / So Philip got ready and went. (So Philip got ready and went.)

Now an Ethiopian eunuch, (Now an Ethiopian eunuch,) / who was an important official (who was an important official) / in charge of the treasury of the queen of Ethiopia, (in charge of the treasury of the queen of Ethiopia,) / was on his way home. (was on his way home.) / Now an Ethiopian eunuch, who was an important official in charge of the treasury of the queen of Ethiopia, was on his way home. (Now an Ethiopian eunuch, who was an important official in charge of the treasury of the queen of Ethiopia, was on his way home.)



ls15e.mp3

He had been to Jerusalem (He had been to Jerusalem) / to worship God (to worship God) / and was going back home in his carriage. (and was going back home in his carriage.) / He had been to Jerusalem to worship God and was going back home in his carriage. (He had been to Jerusalem to worship God and was going back home in his carriage.)



ls15eb.mp3

As he rode along, (As he rode along,) / he was reading (he was reading) / from the book of the prophet Isaiah. (from the book of the prophet Isaiah.) / As he rode along, he was reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah. (As he rode along, he was reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah.) / The Holy Spirit said to Philip, (The Holy Spirit said to Philip,) / Go over to that carriage (Go over to that carriage) / and stay close to it. (and stay close to it.) / The Holy Spirit said to Philip, Go over to that carriage and stay close to it. (The Holy Spirit said to Philip, Go over to that carriage and stay close to it.)

Philip ran over (Philip ran over) / and heard him reading (and heard him reading) / from the book of the prophet Isaiah. (from the book of the prophet Isaiah.) / Philip ran over and heard him reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah. (Philip ran over and heard him reading from the book of the prophet

Isaiah.) / He asked him, (He asked him,) / Do you understand what you are reading? (Do you understand what you are reading?) / He asked him, Do you understand what you are reading? (He asked him, Do you understand what you are reading?)

The official replied, (The official replied,) / How can I understand (How can I understand) / unless someone explains it to me? (unless someone explains it to me?) / The official replied, How can I understand unless someone explains it to me? (The official replied, How can I understand unless someone explains it to me?) / And he invited Philip (And he invited Philip) / to climb up and sit in the carriage with him. (to climb up and sit in the carriage with him.) / And he invited Philip to climb up and sit in the carriage with him. (And he invited Philip to climb up and sit in the carriage with him.)

The official asked Philip, (The official asked Philip,) / Tell me, (Tell me,) / of whom is the prophet saying this? (of whom is the prophet saying this?) / Of himself or of someone else? (Of himself or of someone else?) / The official asked Philip, Tell me, of whom is the prophet saying this? Of himself or of someone else? (The official asked Philip, Tell me, of whom is the prophet saying this? Of himself or of someone else?) / Then Philip began to speak; (Then Philip began to speak;) / starting from this passage of scripture, (starting from this passage of scripture,) / he told him the Good News about Jesus. (he told him the Good News about Jesus.) / Then Philip began to speak; starting from this passage of scripture, he told him the Good News about Jesus. (Then Philip began to speak; starting from this passage of scripture, he told him the Good News about Jesus.)

As they traveled down the road, (As they traveled down the road,) / they came to a place where there was some water. (they came to a place where there was some water.) / As they traveled down the road, they came to a place where there was some water. (As they traveled down the road, they came to a place where there was some water.) / The official said, (The official said,) / Here is some water. (Here is some water.) / The official said, Here is some water. (The official said, Here is some water.) / What is to keep me from being baptized? (What is to keep me from being baptized?) / The official ordered the carriage to stop, (The official ordered the carriage to stop,) / and both Philip and the official went down into the water, (and both Philip and the official went down into the water,) / and Philip baptized him. (and Philip baptized him.) / The official ordered the carriage to stop, and both Philip and the official went down into the water, and Philip baptized him. (The official ordered the carriage to stop, and both Philip and the official went down into the water, and Philip baptized him.)

When they came up out of the water, (When they came up out of the water,) / the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away. (the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away.) / When they came up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away. (When they came up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away.) / The official did not see him again, (The official did not see him again,) / but continued on his way, full of joy. (but continued on his way, full of joy.) / The official did not see him again, but continued on his way, full of joy. (The official did not see him again, but continued on his way, full of joy.)

Philip found himself in another city. (Philip found himself in another city.) / He went on to Caesarea, (He went on to Caesarea,) / and on the way he

preached the Good News in every town. (and on the way he preached the Good News in every town.) / He went on to Caesarea, and on the way he preached the Good News in every town. (He went on to Caesarea, and on the way he preached the Good News in every town.) /

In the meantime (In the meantime) / Saul kept up his violent threats of murder (Saul kept up his violent threats of murder) / against the followers of the Lord. (against the followers of the Lord.) / In the meantime Saul kept up his violent threats of murder against the followers of the Lord. (In the meantime Saul kept up his violent threats of murder against the followers of the Lord.) / He went to the High Priest (He went to the High Priest) / and asked for letters of introduction (and asked for letters of introduction) / to the synagogues in Damascus, (to the synagogues in Damascus,) / He went to the High Priest and asked for letters of introduction to the synagogues in Damascus, (He went to the High Priest and asked for letters of introduction to the synagogues in Damascus,) so that if he should find there (so that if he should find there) / any followers of the Way of the Lord, (any followers of the Way of the Lord,) / so that if he should find there any followers of the Way of the Lord, (so that if he should find there any followers of the Way of the Lord,) / he would be able to arrest them, (he would be able to arrest them,) / both men and women, (both men and women,) / and bring them back to Jerusalem. (and bring them back to Jerusalem.) / he would be able to arrest them, both men and women, and bring them back to Jerusalem. (he would be able to arrest them, both men and women, and bring them back to Jerusalem.)



ls15g.mp3



ls15gb.mp3

As Saul was coming near the city of Damascus, (As Saul was coming near the city of Damascus,) / suddenly a light from the sky flashed around him. (suddenly

a light from the sky flashed around him.) / As Saul was coming near the city of Damascus, suddenly a light from the sky flashed around him. (As Saul was coming near the city of Damascus, suddenly a light from the sky flashed around him.) / He fell to the ground (He fell to the ground) / and heard a voice saying to him, (and heard a voice saying to him,) / Saul, Saul. Why do you persecute me? (Saul, Saul. Why do you persecute me?) / He fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to him, Saul, Saul! Why do you persecute me? (He fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to him, Saul, Saul! Why do you persecute me?)

Who are you, Lord? he asked. (Who are you, Lord? he asked.) / I am Jesus, whom you persecute, (I am Jesus, whom you persecute,) / the voice said. (the voice said.) / I am Jesus, whom you persecute, the voice said. (I am Jesus, whom you persecute, the voice said.) / But get up and go into the city, (But get up and go into the city,) / where you will be told what you must do. (where you will be told what you must do.) / But get up and go into the city, where you will be told what you must do. (But get up and go into the city, where you will be told what you must do.)

The men who were traveling with Saul (The men who were traveling with Saul) / had stopped, not saying a word; (had stopped, not saying a word;) / they heard the voice but could not see anyone. (they heard the voice but could not see anyone.) / The men who were traveling with Saul had stopped, not saying a word; they heard the voice but could not see anyone. (The men who were traveling with Saul had stopped, not saying a word; they heard the voice but could not see anyone.)

Saul got up from the ground (Saul got up from the ground) / and opened his eyes, (and opened his eyes,) / but could not see a thing. (but could not see a thing.) / Saul got up from the ground and opened his eyes, but could not see a thing. (Saul got up from the ground and opened his eyes, but could not see a thing.)

So they took him by the hand (So they took him by the hand) / and led him into Damascus. (and led him into Damascus.) / So they took him by the hand and led him into Damascus. (So they took him by the hand and led him into Damascus.)



ls15h.mp3



ls15hb.mp3

For three days he was not able to see, (For three days he was not able to see,) / and during that time (and during that time) / he did not eat or drink anything. (he did not eat or drink anything.) / For three days he was not able to see, and during that time he did not eat or drink anything. (For three days he was not able to see, and during that time he did not eat or drink anything.)

There was a believer in Damascus (There was a believer in Damascus) / named Ananias. (named Ananias.) / There was a believer in Damascus named Ananias. (There was a believer in Damascus named Ananias.) / He had a vision (He had a vision) / in which the Lord said to him, Ananias. (in which the Lord said to him, Ananias.) / He had a vision in which the Lord said to him, Ananias. (He had a vision in which the Lord said to him, Ananias.) / Here I am, Lord, he answered. (Here I am, Lord, he answered.)

The Lord said to him, (The Lord said to him,) / Get ready and go to Straight Street, (Get ready and go to Straight Street,) / and at the house of Judas (and at the house of Judas) / ask for a man from Tarsus named Saul. (ask for a man from

Tarsus named Saul.) / The Lord said to him, Get ready and go to Straight Street, and at the house of Judas ask for a man from Tarsus named Saul. (The Lord said to him, Get ready and go to Straight Street, and at the house of Judas ask for a man from Tarsus named Saul.) / He is praying, (He is praying,) / and in a vision (and in a vision) / he has seen a man named Ananias come in (he has seen a man named Ananias come in) / and place his hands on him (and place his hands on him) / so that he might see again. (so that he might see again.) / He is praying, and in a vision he has seen a man named Ananias come in and place his hands on him so that he might see again. (He is praying, and in a vision he has seen a man named Ananias come in and place his hands on him so that he might see again.)

Ananias answered, (Ananias answered,) / Lord, many people have told me about this man (Lord, many people have told me about this man) / and about all the terrible things he has done (and about all the terrible things he has done) / to your people in Jerusalem. (to your people in Jerusalem.) / Ananias answered, Lord, many people have told me about this man and about all the terrible things he has done to your people in Jerusalem. (Ananias answered, Lord, many people have told me about this man and about all the terrible things he has done to your people in Jerusalem.)

And he has come to Damascus (And he has come to Damascus) / with authority from the chief priests (with authority from the chief priests) / to arrest all who worship you. (to arrest all who worship you.) / And he has come to Damascus with authority from the chief priests to arrest all who worship you. (And he has come to Damascus with authority from the chief priests to arrest all who worship you.)



ls15i.mp3



ls15ib.mp3

The Lord said to him, (The Lord said to him,) / Go, because I have chosen him to serve me, (Go, because I have chosen him to serve me,) / to make my name known to Gentiles and kings (to make my name known to Gentiles and kings) / and to the people of Israel. (and to the people of Israel.) / The Lord said to him, Go, because I have chosen him to serve me, to make my name known to Gentiles and kings and to the people of Israel. (The Lord said to him, Go, because I have chosen him to serve me, to make my name known to Gentiles and kings and to the people of Israel.) / And I myself will show him (And I myself will show him) / all that he must suffer for my sake. (all that he must suffer for my sake.) / And I myself will show him all that he must suffer for my sake. (And I myself will show him all that he must suffer for my sake.)

So Ananias went, (So Ananias went,) / entered the house where Saul was, (entered the house where Saul was,) / and placed his hands on him. (and placed his hands on him.) / So Ananias went, entered the house where Saul was, and placed his hands on him. (So Ananias went, entered the house where Saul was, and placed his hands on him.)

Brother Saul, he said, (Brother Saul, he said,) / the Lord has sent me—Jesus himself, (the Lord has sent me—Jesus himself,) / Brother Saul, he said, the Lord has sent me—Jesus himself, (Brother Saul, he said, the Lord has sent me—Jesus himself,) / who appeared to you on the road (who appeared to you on the road) / as you were coming here. (as you were coming here.) / who appeared to you on the road as you were coming here. (who appeared to you on the road as you were coming here.) / He sent me (He sent me) / so that you might see again (so that you might see again) / and be filled with the Holy Spirit. (and be filled with the Holy Spirit.) / He sent me so that you might see again and be

filled with the Holy Spirit. (He sent me so that you might see again and be filled with the Holy Spirit.)

At once (At once) / something like fish scales (something like fish scales) / fell from Saul's eyes, (fell from Saul's eyes,) / and he was able to see again. (and he was able to see again.) / At once something like fish scales fell from Saul's eyes, and he was able to see again. (At once something like fish scales fell from Saul's eyes, and he was able to see again.)

He stood up (He stood up) / and was baptized; (and was baptized;) / and after he had eaten, (and after he had eaten,) / his strength came back. (his strength came back.) / He stood up and was baptized; and after he had eaten, his strength came back. (He stood up and was baptized; and after he had eaten, his strength came back.)



ls15j.mp3



ls15jb.mp3

Saul stayed for a few days (Saul stayed for a few days) / with the believers in Damascus. (with the believers in Damascus.) / Saul stayed for a few days with the believers in Damascus. (Saul stayed for a few days with the believers in Damascus.) / He went straight to the synagogues (He went straight to the synagogues) / and began to preach (and began to preach) / that Jesus was the Son of God. (that Jesus was the Son of God.) / He went straight to the synagogues and began to preach that Jesus was the Son of God. (He went straight to the synagogues and began to preach that Jesus was the Son of God.)

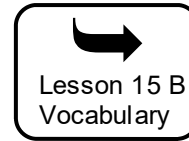
All who heard him (All who heard him) / were amazed and asked, (were amazed and asked,) / Isn't he the one who in Jerusalem (Isn't he the one who in Jerusalem) / was killing those who worship that man Jesus? (was killing those

who worship that man Jesus?) / All who heard him were amazed and asked, Isn't he the one who in Jerusalem was killing those who worship that man Jesus? (All who heard him were amazed and asked, Isn't he the one who in Jerusalem was killing those who worship that man Jesus?) / And didn't he come here (And didn't he come here) / for the very purpose of arresting those people (for the very purpose of arresting those people) / and taking them back to the chief priests? (and taking them back to the chief priests?) / And didn't he come here for the very purpose of arresting those people and taking them back to the chief priests? (And didn't he come here for the very purpose of arresting those people and taking them back to the chief priests?)

(Lesson Text: Today's English Version, Copyright ©1992 by the **ABS** Used by permission. All rights reserved.)

Go to www.ethnicharvest.org/books.html to read the Lesson Text in your language.

LESSON 15-B: PRONUNCIATION LESSON



15.1-B Read *The Wise Man's Discovery* aloud for pronunciation practice.

¹ A long time ago, there was a wise man living in the Low Country. He and his neighbors had built new homes and started a new life.

² Their first winter in the Low Country was difficult because many had not finished their houses or harvested their crops before winter. When spring finally came, they knew that they must not only plant their crops, but they must also build a granary to store the coming harvest.

³ They talked much about the granary. When they lived in the High Country, they only needed to build it strong enough to keep Goat out. In the Low Country, they knew they also needed to consider Bear, Deer, and Elk. Because Bear was powerful, the granary must be very strong.

⁴ There was an old steel road that passed by their village. The large steam-breathing machines that once used this road no longer needed it. There was a huge iron box on wheels about a half hour's walk up the steel road from the village. All agreed that if the box could be pushed to the village, it could serve as a safe granary. Even Bear could not open the strong iron doors.

⁵ So the men tried to push the iron box to the village. But it was so heavy that they could barely make it move. All the men worked very hard. After much effort, they had pushed the box only as far as the length of a man's hand before they needed to rest. For two days they pushed and rested. Pushed and rested. Then they

pushed and rested some more. At last, they were all exhausted. "It would take less work," they said, "to build a granary in the village than to move the iron box."

⁶ A new granary was built in the village. It held food during two winters. And then the drought came. The fields produced little grain. In the fall, few berries were found in the forest because Bear was taking almost everything for himself. Deer and Elk were eating all that was left. Still, because the people had been careful and worked hard, the granary held enough food to last them for the winter.

⁷ Then one night, just before Bear was ready to go to sleep for the winter, he smashed the granary door. He ate much of the food. After Bear left, Deer and Elk also filled their bellies.

⁸ During the cold, hard winter, when everyone was hungry, the wise man thought again about the iron box on the steel road. Certainly, he decided, there must be a way to move it to the village. Was it possible that the problem had been that they had stopped to rest each time after moving the iron box only a short distance?

⁹ Early the next spring, the wise man had a plan. He took four young men with him to the iron box on wheels. Each man led his donkey.

¹⁰ The men first tied a long rope to the front of the iron box. Then they cut a tall tree for a pole and stood it upright. They threw the rope over the top of the pole. Finally, they fastened heavy rocks to the end of the rope. The wise man knew that the rope was pulling on the iron box even though it was not yet moving. Next, the wise man harnessed the donkeys to the iron box so that they could also pull.

Finally, the wise man and the four young men pushed as hard as they could. The iron box slowly began to move.

¹¹ But the wise man's plan was different from the villagers' plan before. He and the young men did not stop to rest. Instead, even after the heavy rocks had reached the ground, the men kept pushing the iron box.

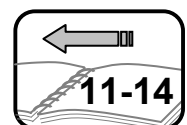
¹² The iron box on wheels did just what the wise man thought it would. The longer they pushed, the faster the iron box moved. They did not need to work as hard to keep it rolling once it began to move.

¹³ The wise man knew that if all of the village men would work together, they could move the iron box to the village. He knew that they would all need to work very hard to get the iron box to start moving. Then once it was moving some could rest and others could push. If they did not stop, they could slowly move the iron box to their village.

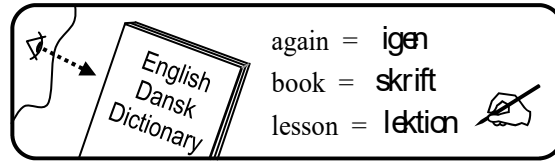
¹⁴ The next year, their food would be safe from Bear.

¹⁵ If you are beginning to study English with **Spoken English Learned Quickly**, you know that learning any language is difficult. You may work hard for two or three weeks and it will seem like nothing is happening. However, learning to speak English is much like pushing a heavy car on a railroad track. It will take much effort at first. But if you keep working, you will see more and more progress.

This is the end of Lesson 15. Use your extra time this week to review Lessons 11-14.



LESSON 15-A VOCABULARY



astonishment	passage	to introduce
at once	principal	to invite
bitterness, bitterly	purpose	to light
carriage	queen	to offer
class	reply	to pay
climber	scales	to pay attention
during	scripture	to persecute
envy	share	to prophesy
Ethiopia	sin	to reply
eunuch	so	to ride
everywhere	society	to serve
explanation	south	to show
fish	terrible, terribly	to testify
ground	testimony	to travel
important, importantly	to astonish	to worship
introduction	to be	travel
invitation	to be bitter	treasury
joy, joyful, joyfully	to be paralyzed	very
kingdom	to buy	violence
light	to climb	violent, violently
magic	to drink	vision
meantime	to explain	worship
messenger	to flash	
offering	to get	
paralytic	to get ready	

Expressions

The crowds **paid close attention** to what he said. (8:6)

Everyone in the city, **from all classes of society**, paid close attention to him. (8:10)

He **stayed close** to Philip. (8:13)

So **he offered money** to them, and said, "Give this power to me too." (8:18-19)

You **have no part** in our work. (8:21)

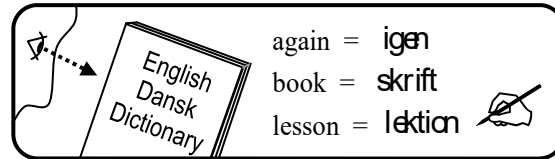
You are **full of** envy. (8:23)

As **they traveled** down the road, **they came to** a place where there was some water. (8:36)

In the meantime Saul kept up his violent threats of murder. (9:1)

He sent me **so that** you might see again. (9:17)

LESSON 15-B VOCABULARY



barely	hungry, hungrier,	to fasten
bear	hungriest, hungrily	to harness
belly	iron	to last
berry	machine	to make
box	night, nightly	to make (something)
care	pole	move
deer	problem	to make an effort
difficult, difficulty	progress, progression	to move
distance	railroad	to pull
donkey	rock	to rest
drought	safe, safer, safest,	to sleep
effort	safely	to smash
elk	sleep	to store
exhaustion	spring (season)	to tie
fall (season)	steam	top
far, farther, farthest	steel	track
final, finally	to be	tree
food	to be careful	upright
goat	to be difficult	village
granary	to be exhausted	wheel
half-hour	to be left	winter
harness	to be possible	
harvest	to be powerful	
huge	to breath	
	to cut	

Expressions

When spring **finally** came, they knew that they must build a granary. (§2)

The machines that once used this road **no longer needed it**. (§4)

All agreed that if the box could be pushed to the village, it could serve as a safe granary. (§4)

It was so heavy that **they could barely** make it move. (§5)

At last, they were all exhausted. (§5)

Deer and Elk were eating **all that was left**. (§6)

One night, **just before** Bear was ready to go to sleep for the winter, he smashed the granary door. (§7)

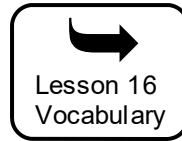
During the cold, hard winter, the wise man thought again about the iron box on the steel road. (§8)

Early the next spring, the wise man had a plan. (§9)

Finally, they fastened heavy rocks to the end of the rope. (§10)

Instead, the men kept pushing the iron box. (§11)

LESSON 16: EXERCISE LESSON



ls16a.mp3



ls16ab.mp3

16.1 Lesson Text: 9:22 - 31 (Acts). Repeat each sentence.

But Saul's preaching (But Saul's preaching) / became even more powerful, (became even more powerful,) / But Saul's preaching became even more powerful, (But Saul's preaching became even more powerful,) / and his proofs (and his proofs) / that Jesus was the Messiah (that Jesus was the Messiah) / were so convincing (were so convincing) / and his proofs that Jesus was the Messiah were so convincing (and his proofs that Jesus was the Messiah were so convincing) / that the Jews who lived in Damascus (that the Jews who lived in Damascus) / could not answer him. (could not answer him.) / that the Jews who lived in Damascus could not answer him. (that the Jews who lived in Damascus could not answer him.)

After many days had gone by, (After many days had gone by,) / the Jews met together and made plans to kill Saul, (the Jews met together and made plans to kill Saul,) / but he was told of their plan. (but he was told of their plan.) After many days had gone by, the Jews met together and made plans to kill Saul, but he was told of their plan. (After many days had gone by, the Jews met together and made plans to kill Saul, but he was told of their plan.) Day and night they watched the city gates (Day and night they watched the city gates) / in order to kill him. (in order to kill him.) Day and night they watched the city gates in order to kill him. (Day and night they watched the city gates in order to kill him.)

But one night (But one night) / Saul's followers took him (Saul's followers took him) / and let him down through an opening in the wall, (and let him down through an opening in the wall,) / lowering him in a basket. (lowering him in a

basket.) But one night Saul's followers took him and let him down through an opening in the wall, lowering him in a basket. (But one night Saul's followers took him and let him down through an opening in the wall, lowering him in a basket.) / Saul went to Jerusalem (Saul went to Jerusalem) / and tried to join the disciples. (and tried to join the disciples.) Saul went to Jerusalem and tried to join the disciples. (Saul went to Jerusalem and tried to join the disciples.) / But they would not believe (But they would not believe) / that he was a disciple, (that he was a disciple,) / and they were all afraid of him. (and they were all afraid of him.) But they would not believe that he was a disciple, and they were all afraid of him. (But they would not believe that he was a disciple, and they were all afraid of him.)

Then Barnabas came to his help (Then Barnabas came to his help) / and took him to the apostles. (and took him to the apostles.) / Then Barnabas came to his help and took him to the apostles. (Then Barnabas came to his help and took him to the apostles.) / He explained to them (He explained to them) how Saul had seen the Lord on the road (how Saul had seen the Lord on the road) / and that the Lord had spoken to him. (and that the Lord had spoken to him.) / He explained to them how Saul had seen the Lord on the road and that the Lord had spoken to him. (He explained to them how Saul had seen the Lord on the road and that the Lord had spoken to him.) / He also told them (He also told them) / how boldly Saul had preached in the name of Jesus (how boldly Saul had preached in the name of Jesus) / in Damascus. (in Damascus.) / He also told them how boldly Saul had preached in the name of Jesus in Damascus. (He also told them how boldly Saul had preached in the name of Jesus in Damascus.)

And so Saul stayed with them (And so Saul stayed with them) / and went all over Jerusalem, (and went all over Jerusalem,) / preaching boldly in the name of



ls16b.mp3



ls16bb.mp3

the Lord. (preaching boldly in the name of the Lord.) / And so Saul stayed with them and went all over Jerusalem, preaching boldly in the name of the Lord. (And so Saul stayed with them and went all over Jerusalem, preaching boldly in the name of the Lord.) / He also talked and disputed (He also talked and disputed) / with the Greek-speaking Jews, (with the Greek-speaking Jews,) / but they tried to kill him. (but they tried to kill him.) / He also talked and disputed with the Greek-speaking Jews, but they tried to kill him. (He also talked and disputed with the Greek-speaking Jews, but they tried to kill him.)

When the believers found out about this, (When the believers found out about this,) / they took Saul to Caesarea (they took Saul to Caesarea) / and sent him away to Tarsus. (and sent him away to Tarsus.) / When the believers found out about this, they took Saul to Caesarea and sent him away to Tarsus. (When the believers found out about this, they took Saul to Caesarea and sent him away to Tarsus.) / And so it was (And so it was) / that the church (that the church) / had a time of peace. (had a time of peace.) / And so it was that the church had a time of peace. (And so it was that the church had a time of peace.) / Through the help (Through the help) / of the Holy Spirit (of the Holy Spirit) / it was strengthened and grew in numbers, (it was strengthened and grew in numbers,) / as it lived in reverence for the Lord. (as it lived in reverence for the Lord.) / Through the help of the Holy Spirit it was strengthened and grew in numbers, as it lived in reverence for the Lord. (Through the help of the Holy Spirit it was strengthened and grew in numbers, as it lived in reverence for the Lord.)

(Lesson Text: Today's English Version, Copyright ©1992 by the **ABS** Used by permission. All rights reserved.)

Go to www.ethnicharvest.org/books.html to read the Lesson Text in your language.

LESSON 16: EXERCISE LESSON

16.2 Repeat each sentence.

16.2a Complete the following sentences with "their coats up over there."

I always hang (I always hang their coats up over there.) / I always **hung** (I always **hung** their coats up over there.) / I will hang (I will hang their coats up over there.)

She always hangs (She always hangs their coats up over there.) / She always **hung** (She always **hung** their coats up over there.) / She will hang (She will hang their coats up over there.)

You seldom hang (You seldom hang their coats up over there.) / You seldom **hung** (You seldom **hung** their coats up over there.) / You will hang (You will hang their coats up over there.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the phone up immediately."

We usually hang (We usually hang the phone up immediately.) / We usually **hung** (We usually **hung** the phone up immediately.) / We will hang (We will hang the phone up immediately.)

They never hang (They never hang the phone up immediately.) / They never **hung** (They never **hung** the phone up immediately.) / They will hang (They will hang the phone up immediately.)

16.2b Complete the following sentences with "the law while driving."

I never break (I never break the law while driving.) / I never **broke** (I never **broke** the law while driving.) / I will never break (I will never break the law while driving.)

He never breaks (He never breaks the law while driving.) / He never **broke** (He never **broke** the law while driving.) / He will never break (He will never break the law while driving.)

You never break (You never break the law while driving.) / You never **broke** (You never **broke** the law while driving.) / You will never break (You will never break the law while driving.)

— Complete the following sentences with "the meeting up at noon."

We usually break (We usually break the meeting up at noon.) / We **broke** (We **broke** the meeting up at noon.) / We will break (We will break the meeting up at noon.)

They always break (They always break the meeting up at noon.) / They **broke** (They **broke** the meeting up at noon.) / They will break (They will break the meeting up at noon.)

16.3 Repeat each sentence.

16.3a They **broke** the meeting **up** at noon. (They **broke** the meeting **up** at noon.)

They will **break up** at noon. (They will **break up** at noon.)

16.3b She **brought** the children **up** by herself. (She **brought** the children **up** by herself.)

He **will bring** the topic **up** during dinner. (He **will bring** the topic **up** during dinner.)

16.3c They **called** the meeting **off** this morning. (They **called** the meeting **off** this morning.)

They **called off** the meeting. (They **called off** the meeting.)

16.3d The officers were **called up** last week. (The officers were **called up** last week.)

16.3e We **cleaned** the house **up** quickly.) (We **cleaned** the house **up** quickly.)

16.3f They **did** their lesson **over**. (They **did** their lesson **over**.)

16.3g Please **drop in** if you can. (Please **drop in** if you can.)

16.3h He will **drop** the lesson **off** at my house. (He will **drop** the lesson **off** at my house.)

- 16.3i You must **fill** the insurance form **out** now. (You must **fill** the insurance form **out** now.)
You must **fill out** the insurance form. (You must **fill out** the insurance form.)
- 16.3j They **got on** the airplane together. (They **got on** the airplane together.)
- 16.3k She will **get up** early tomorrow morning. (She will **get up** early tomorrow morning.)
- 16.3l We need to **give** the money **back** to them soon. (We need to **give** the money **back** to them soon.)
We must **give back** the money. (We must **give back** the money.)
- 16.3m I **went over** to his house yesterday. (I **went over** to his house yesterday.)
- 16.3n **Hand in** your lesson before you leave. (**Hand in** your lesson before you leave.)
- 16.3o He **hung** the phone **up** very quickly. (He **hung** the phone **up** very quickly.)
He **hung up** quickly. (He **hung up** quickly.)
She **hung** her clothes **up** this morning. (She **hung** her clothes **up** this morning.)
She **hung up** her clothes. (She **hung up** her clothes.)
- 16.3p I **looked** the lesson **over** rather quickly. (I **looked** the lesson **over** rather quickly.)

- 16.3q I must **look into** that problem. (I must **look into** that problem.)
- 16.3r **Look** that word **up** in your book. (**Look** that word **up** in your book.)
- 16.3s You will need to **pick** him **up** at the airport. (You will need to **pick** him **up** at the airport.)
Pick your lesson **up** before you leave. (**Pick** your lesson **up** before you leave.)
Pick up your lesson as you leave. (**Pick up** your lesson as you leave.)
- 16.3t **Put** your clothes **away** before you leave. (**Put** your clothes **away** before you leave.)
- 16.3u **Put** your clothes **on** before you leave. (**Put** your clothes **on** before you leave.)
- 16.3v **Put** the animals **out** if they cause any problem. (**Put** the animals **out** if they cause any problem.)
- 16.3w He **ran across** an important book. (He **ran across** an important book.)
- 16.3x He will **show up** at the meeting. (He will **show up** at the meeting.)
- 16.3y She **took** her coat **off** because she was hot. (She **took** her coat **off** because she was hot.)
We **took off** about noon. (We **took off** about noon.)

- 16.3z He **took** her **out** to see the city. (He **took** her **out** to see the city.)
Please **take** the groceries **out** of the car. (Please **take** the groceries **out** of the car.)
- 16.3aa Please **think** it **over** before you say anything. (Please **think** it **over** before you say anything.)
- 16.3bb **Try** these clothes **on** before you decide. (**Try** these clothes **on** before you decide.)
- 16.3cc He **turned** his lesson **in** before he left. (He **turned** his lesson **in** before he left.)
He already **turned in** his lesson. (He already **turned in** his lesson.)
He **turned in** early because he was tired. (He **turned in** early because he was tired.)
- 16.3dd Always **turn** the machines **off** before you leave. (Always **turn** the machines **off** before you leave.)
- 16.3ee You must **turn** the machines **on** when you first arrive. (You must **turn** the machines **on** when you first arrive.)
- 16.3ff **Turn** the lights **out** before you leave. (**Turn** the lights **out** before you leave.)
Please **turn out** the lights. (Please **turn out** the lights.)
- 16.3gg Turn the **heat up** if you want to. (Turn the **heat up** if you want to.)

16.4 Repeat each word (regular verbs).

16.4a TO FEAR (to fear) / There is nothing to fear. (There is nothing to fear.)

Fear. (Fear.) / Please don't fear them. (Please don't fear them.)

fearing (fearing) / He is fearing the punishment. (He is fearing the punishment.)

feared: it is feared / it was feared / it will be feared

I fear (I fear)	I feared (I feared)	I will fear (I will fear)
he fears (he fears)	he feared (he feared)	he will fear (he will fear)
she fears (she fears)	she feared (she feared)	she will fear (she will fear)
it fears (it fears)	it feared (it feared)	it will fear (it will fear)
you fear (you fear)	you feared (you feared)	you will fear (you will fear)
we fear (we fear)	we feared (we feared)	we will fear (we will fear)
they fear (they fear)	they feared (they feared)	they will fear (they will fear)

16.4b TO DISPUTE (to dispute) / They always try to dispute the truth. (They always try to dispute the truth.)

Dispute. (Dispute.) / Please don't dispute it. (Please don't dispute it.)

disputing (disputing) / He is disputing the truth. (He is disputing the truth.)

disputed (disputed) / it is disputed (it is disputed) / it was disputed (it was disputed) / it will be disputed (it will be disputed)

- I dispute (I dispute) / he disputes (he disputes) / she disputes (she disputes) / it disputes (it disputes) / you dispute (you dispute) / we dispute (we dispute) / they dispute (they dispute)
- I disputed (I disputed) / he disputed (he disputed) / she disputed (she disputed) / it disputed (it disputed) / you disputed (you disputed) / we disputed (we disputed) / they disputed (they disputed)

- I will dispute (I will dispute) / he will dispute (he will dispute) / she will dispute (she will dispute) / it will dispute (it will dispute) / you will dispute (you will dispute) / we will dispute (we will dispute) / they will dispute (they will dispute)

16.4c TO PICK (to pick) / He tried to pick it up. (He tried to pick it up.)

Pick. (Pick.) / Please don't pick it up. (Please don't pick it up.)

picking (picking) / He is picking it up. (He is picking it up.)

picked (picked) / it is picked (it is picked) / it was picked (it was picked) / it will be picked (it will be picked)

I pick (I pick)	I picked (I picked)	I will pick (I will pick)
he picks (he picks)	he picked (he picked)	he will pick (he will pick)
she picks (she picks)	she picked (she picked)	she will pick (she will pick)
it picks (it picks)	it picked (it picked)	it will pick (it will pick)
you pick (you pick)	you picked (you picked)	you will pick (you will pick)
we pick (we pick)	we picked (we picked)	we will pick (we will pick)
they pick (they pick)	they picked (they picked)	they will pick (they will pick)

16.4d TO DROP (to drop) / He tried to drop it. (He tried to drop it.)

Drop. (Drop.) / Please don't drop it. (Please don't drop it.)

dropping (dropping) / He is dropping it. (He is dropping it.)

dropped (dropped) / it is dropped (it is dropped) / it was dropped (it was dropped) / it will be dropped (it will be dropped)

- I drop (I drop) / he drops (he drops) / she drops (she drops) / it drops (it drops) / you drop (you drop) / we drop (we drop) / they drop (they drop)
- I dropped (I dropped) / he dropped (he dropped) / she dropped (she dropped) / it dropped (it dropped) / you dropped (you dropped) / we dropped (we dropped) / they dropped (they dropped)



ls16f.mp3



ls16fb.mp3

- I will drop (I will drop) / he will drop (he will drop) / she will drop (she will drop) / it will drop (it will drop) / you will drop (you will drop) / we will drop (we will drop) / they will drop (they will drop)

16.4e TO LOWER (to lower) / He tried to lower it to us. (He tried to lower it to us.)

Lower. (Lower.) / Please lower it. (Please lower it.)

lowering (lowering) / He is not lowering it. (He is not lowering it.)

lowered (lowered) / it is lowered (it is lowered) / it was lowered (it was lowered) / it will be lowered (it will be lowered)

I lower (I lower)	I lowered (I lowered)	I will lower (I will lower)
he lowers (he lowers)	he lowered (he lowered)	he will lower (he will lower)
she lowers (she lowers)	she lowered (she lowered)	she will lower (she will lower)
it lowers (it lowers)	it lowered (it lowered)	it will lower (it will lower)
you lower (you lower)	you lowered (you lowered)	you will lower (you will lower)
we lower (we lower)	we lowered (we lowered)	we will lower (we will lower)
they lower (they lower)	they lowered (they lowered)	they will lower (they will lower)

16.5 **Answer the following sentences with, "in order to find him."** I will say, "They watched the city gates _____. " You will answer, "They watched the city gates in order to find him." I will say, "They were watching the city gates _____. " You will answer, "They were watching the city gates in order to find him."



ls16g.mp3



ls16gb.mp3

16.5a They watched the city gates _____.

(They watched the city gates in order to find him.) They watched the city gates in order to find him. (They watched the city gates in order to find him.)

- They were watching the city gates _____.
(They were watching the city gates in order to find him.) They were watching the city gates in order to find him. (They were watching the city gates in order to find him.)
- They are watching the city gates _____.
(They are watching the city gates in order to find him.) They are watching the city gates in order to find him. (They are watching the city gates in order to find him.)
- They will watch the city gates _____.
(They will watch the city gates in order to find him.) They will watch the city gates in order to find him. (They will watch the city gates in order to find him.)
- They will be watching the city gates _____.
(They will be watching the city gates in order to find him.) They will be watching the city gates in order to find him. (They will be watching the city gates in order to find him.)

16.5b We walked toward the house _____.

(We walked toward the house in order to find him.) We walked toward the house in order to find him. (We walked toward the house in order to find him.)

- We were walking toward the house _____.
(We were walking toward the house in order to find him.) We were walking toward the house in order to find him. (We were walking toward the house in order to find him.)
- We are walking toward the house _____.
(We are walking toward the house in order to find him.) We are walking toward the house in order to find him. (We are walking toward the house in order to find him.)
- We will walk toward the house _____.
(We will walk toward the house in order to find him.) We will walk toward the house in order to find him. (We will walk toward the house in order to find him.)
- We will be walking toward the house _____.
(We will be walking toward the house in order to find him.) We will be walking toward the house in order to find him. (We will be walking toward the house in order to find him.)

16.5c She went to his office _____.

(She went to his office in order to find him.) She went to his office in order to find him. (She went to his office in order to find him.)

- She was going to his office _____.
(She was going to his office in order to find him.) She was going to his office in order to find him. (She was going to his office in order to find him.)

- She is going to his office _____.

(She is going to his office in order to find him.) She is going to his office in order to find him. (She is going to his office in order to find him.)

- She will go to his office _____.

(She will go to his office in order to find him.) She will go to his office in order to find him. (She will go to his office in order to find him.)

- She will be going to his office _____.

(She will be going to his office in order to find him.) She will be going to his office in order to find him. (She will be going to his office in order to find him.)

16.6 Repeat each word (irregular verbs).



ls16h.mp3

16.6a **TO BRING** (to bring) / He wanted to bring something. (He wanted to bring something.)



ls16hb.mp3

Bring. (Bring.) / Please try to bring something. (Please try to bring something.)

bringing (bringing) / He is bringing something. (He is bringing something.)

brought (brought) / it is **brought** (it is **brought**) / it was **brought** (it was **brought**) / it will be **brought** (it will be **brought**)

- I bring (I bring) / he brings (he brings) / she brings (she brings) / it brings (it brings) / you bring (you bring) / we bring (we bring) / they bring (they bring)

- I **brought** (I **brought**) / he **brought** (he **brought**) / she **brought** (she **brought**) / it **brought** (it **brought**) / you **brought** (you **brought**) / we **brought** (we **brought**) / they **brought** (they **brought**)
- I will bring (I will bring) / he will bring (he will bring) / she will bring (she will bring) / it will bring (it will bring) / you will bring (you will bring) / we will bring (we will bring) / they will bring (they will bring)

16.6b **TO MAKE** (to make) / He wanted to make more money. (He wanted to make more money.)

Make. (Make.) / Please make more money. (Please make more money.)

making (making) / He is making more money. (He is making more money.)

made (**made**) / it is **made** (it is **made**) / it was **made** (it was **made**) / it will be make (it will be **made**)

I make (I make)	I made (I made)	I will make (I will make)
he makes (he makes)	he made (he made)	he will make (he will make)
she makes (she makes)	she made (she made)	she will make (she will make)
it makes (it makes)	it made (it made)	it will make (it will make)
you make (you make)	you made (you made)	you will make (you will make)
we make (we make)	we made (we made)	we will make (we will make)
they make (they make)	they made (they made)	they will make (they will make)

16.6c **TO FIND** (to find) / He wanted to find more work. (He wanted to find more work.)

Find. (Find.) / Please find more work. (Please find more work.)

finding (finding) / He is always finding more work. (He is always finding more work.)

found (found) / it is **found** (it is **found**) / it was **found** (it was **found**) / it will be **found** (it will be **found**)

- I find (I find) / he finds (he finds) / she finds (she finds) / it finds (it finds) / you find (you find) / we find (we find) / they find (they find)
- I **found** (I **found**) / he **found** (he **found**) / she **found** (she **found**) / it **found** (it **found**) / you **found** (you **found**) / we **found** (we **found**) / they **found** (they **found**)
- I will find (I will find) / he will find (he will find) / she will find (she will find) / it will find (it will find) / you will find (you will find) / we will find (we will find) / they will find (they will find)



ls16i.mp3

16.6d **TO RIDE** (to ride) / He wanted to ride in the car. (He wanted to ride in the car.)

Ride. (Ride.) / Please don't ride in the car. (Please don't ride in the car.)
riding (riding) / He is not riding in the car. (He is not riding in the car.)



ls16ib.mp3

ridden (ridden) / it is **ridden** (it is **ridden**) / it was **ridden** (it was **ridden**) / it will be **ridden** (it will be **ridden**)

I ride (I ride)	I rode (I rode)	I will ride (I will ride)
he rides (he rides)	he rode (he rode)	he will ride (he will ride)
she rides (she rides)	she rode (she rode)	she will ride (she will ride)
it rides (it rides)	it rode (it rode)	it will ride (it will ride)
you ride (you ride)	you rode (you rode)	you will ride (you will ride)
we ride (we ride)	we rode (we rode)	we will ride (we will ride)
they ride (they ride)	they rode (they rode)	they will ride (they will ride)

16.6e **TO FEEL** (to feel) / He didn't want to feel sad. (He didn't want to feel sad.)

Feel. (Feel.) / Please don't feel sad. (Please don't feel sad.)

feeling (feeling) / He is feeling sad. (He is feeling sad.)

felt (felt) / it is **felt** (it is **felt**) / it was **felt** (it was **felt**) / it will be **felt** (it will be **felt**)

- I feel (I feel) / he feels (he feels) / she feels (she feels) / it feels (it feels) / you feel (you feel) / we feel (we feel) / they feel (they feel)
- I **felt** (I **felt**) / he **felt** (he **felt**) / she **felt** (she **felt**) / it **felt** (it **felt**) / you **felt** (you **felt**) / we **felt** (we **felt**) / they **felt** (they **felt**)
- I will feel (I will feel) / he will feel (he will feel) / she will feel (she will feel) / it will feel (it will feel) / you will feel (you will feel) / we will feel (we will feel) / they will feel (they will feel)

16.6f **TO HEAR** (to hear) / He tried to hear her sing. (He tried to hear her sing.)

Hear. (Hear.) / Please hear what he has to say. (Please hear what he has to say.)

hearing (hearing) / He is hearing the song again. (He is hearing the song again.)

heard (heard) / it is **heard** (it is **heard**) / it was **heard** (it was **heard**) / it will be **heard** (it will be **heard**)

I hear (I hear)	I heard (I heard)	I will hear (I will hear)
he hears (he hears)	he heard (he heard)	he will hear (he will hear)
she hears (she hears)	she heard (she heard)	she will hear (she will hear)
it hears (it hears)	it heard (it heard)	it will hear (it will hear)
you hear (you hear)	you heard (you heard)	you will hear (you will hear)
we hear (we hear)	we heard (we heard)	we will hear (we will hear)
they hear (they hear)	they heard (they heard)	they will hear (they will hear)

16.6g **TO BUY** (to buy) / He tried to buy it. (He tried to buy it.)

Buy. (Buy.) / Please don't buy it now. (Please don't buy it now.)

buying (buying) / He is buying it. (He is buying it.)

bought (bought) / it is bought (it is bought) / it was bought (it was bought) / it will be bought (it will be bought)

- I buy (I buy) / he buys (he buys) / she buys (she buys) / it buys (it buys) / you buy (you buy) / we buy (we buy) / they buy (they buy)
- I **bought (I bought)** / he **bought (he bought)** / she **bought (she bought)** / it **bought (it bought)** / you **bought (you bought)** / we **bought (we bought)** / they **bought (they bought)**
- I will buy (I will buy) / he will buy (he will buy) / she will buy (she will buy) / it will buy (it will buy) / you will buy (you will buy) / we will buy (we will buy) / they will buy (they will buy)

16.7 Repeat each sentence.



ls16j.mp3

16.7a You shouldn't do that. (You shouldn't do that.)

Maybe you shouldn't do that. (Maybe you shouldn't do that.)



ls16jb.mp3

16.7b You need to leave. (You need to leave.)

Don't you need to leave? (Don't you need to leave?)

16.7c You need to choose something. (You need to choose something.)

Can I help you choose something? (Can I help you choose something?)

16.7d Listen to what he is saying. (Listen to what he is saying.)

We need to listen to what he is saying. (We need to listen to what he is

16.7e Sit down. (Sit down.)

Please sit down. (Please sit down.)

16.7f Listen to me. (Listen to me.)

May I please have your attention? (May I please have your attention?)

16.7g You need to know this. (You need to know this.)

I think you will want to know this. (I think you will want to know this.)

16.7h We have finished our discussion. (We have finished our discussion.)

Have we finished our discussion? (Have we finished our discussion?)

16.7i You are wrong. (You are wrong.)

I don't think that is correct. (I don't think that is correct.)

16.7j Get out of my way. (Get out of my way.)

May I please come through? (May I please come through?)

16.7k That isn't any of your business. (That isn't any of your business.)

I don't believe that concerns you. (I don't believe that concerns you.)

16.7l It's none of your business. (It's none of your business.)

I'm sorry, but we will take care of that. (I'm sorry, but we will take care of that.)

16.7m I want to talk now. (I want to talk now.)

Excuse me. May I say something? (Excuse me. May I say something?)

16.7n Be more careful with that. (Be more careful with that.)

I would be more careful with that. (I would be more careful with that.)

16.7o You don't need to know. (You don't need to know.)

I don't want to answer that just now. (I don't want to answer that just now.)

16.7p Don't do that. (Don't do that.)

Please wait. (Please wait.)

16.7q You are late. (You are late.)

I think we need to hurry. (I think we need to hurry.)

16.7r He is coming and you are not ready. (He is coming and you are not ready.)

Isn't he coming soon? (Isn't he coming soon?)

16.7s Do it this way. (Do it this way.)

Let me show you how to do it. (Let me show you how to do it.)

16.7t We don't know that. (We don't know that.)

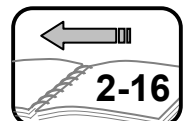
We don't really know that. (We don't really know that.)

16.7u He is always wrong. (He is always wrong.)

Sometimes we think he is wrong. (Sometimes we think he is wrong.)

16.7v I don't want to do it now. (I don't want to do it now.)

Could we do it another time? (Could we do it another time?)



TWO-WORD VERBS

to break up	They broke the meeting up at noon. They will break up at noon.
to bring up	She brought the children up by herself. He will bring the topic up during dinner.
to call off	They called the meeting off this morning. They called off the meeting.
to call up	The officers were called up last week.
to clean up	We cleaned the house up quickly.
to do over	They did their lesson over .
to drop in	Please drop in if you can.
to drop off	He will drop the lesson off at my house.
to fill out	You must fill the insurance form out now. You must fill out the insurance form.
to get on	They got on the airplane together.
to get up	She will get up early tomorrow morning.
to give back	We need to give the money back to them soon. We must give back the money.
to go over	I went over to his house yesterday.
to hand in	Hand in your lesson before you leave.

TWO-WORD VERBS (continued)

to hang up	He hung the phone up very quickly. He hung up quickly. She hung her clothes up this morning. She hung up her clothes.
to look over	I looked the lesson over rather quickly.
to look into	I must look into that problem.
to look up	Look that word up in your book.
to pick up	You will need to pick him up at the airport. Pick your lesson up before you leave. Pick up your lesson as you leave.
to put away	Put your clothes away before you leave.
to put on	Put your clothes on before you leave.
to put out	Put the animals out if they cause any problem.
to run across	He ran across an important book.
to show up	He will show up at the meeting.
to take off	She took her coat off because she was hot. We took off about noon.
to take out	He took her out to see the city. Please take the groceries out of the car.
to think over	Please think it over before you say anything.

TWO-WORD VERBS (continued)

to try on **Try** these clothes **on** before you decide.

to turn in He **turned** his lesson **in** before he left.

He already **turned in** his lesson.

He **turned in** early because he was tired.

to turn off Always **turn** the machines **off** before you leave.

to turn on You must **turn** the machines **on** when you first arrive.

to turn out **Turn** the lights **out** before you leave.

Please **turn out** the lights.

to turn up **Turn** the heat **up** if you want.

WORDS THAT CHANGE THE MEANING

I wanted to go yesterday, but I couldn't.	=	I did not go yesterday.
I wanted to go yesterday, however I wasn't able to.	=	I did not go yesterday.
I wanted to go yesterday. Nonetheless I didn't make it.	=	I did not go yesterday.
Even though I wanted to go yesterday, I couldn't.	=	I did not go yesterday.

It's late. However , let's go anyway.	=	We will go.
Even though it's late, I still want to go.	=	We will go..
It's late, but let's still go.	=	We will go.
It's late. Nonetheless , let's go.	=	We will go.

I don't have much money, however , I still need to buy it.	=	I will buy it.
Even though I don't have much money, I still must buy it.	=	I will buy it.
I don't have much money, but I think I will buy it anyway.	=	I will buy it.
I don't have much money. Nonetheless , I'm going to buy it.	=	I will buy it.

SAYING THINGS POLITELY

You shouldn't do that. ➡

Maybe you shouldn't do that.

You need to leave. ➡

Don't you need to leave?

You need to choose something. ➡

Can I help you choose something?

Listen to what he is saying. ➡

We need to listen to what he is saying.

Sit down. ➡

Please sit down.

Listen to me. ➡

May I please have your attention?

You need to know this. ➡

I think you will want to know this.

We have finished our discussion. ➡

Have we finished our discussion?

You are wrong. ➡

I don't think that is correct.

Get out of my way. ➡

May I please come through?

That isn't any of your business. ➡

I don't believe that concerns you.

It's none of your business. ➡

I'm sorry, but we will take care of that.

I want to talk now. ➡

Excuse me. May I say something?

Be more careful with that. ➡

I would be more careful with that.

SAYING THINGS POLITELY (continued)

You don't need to know. ➡

I don't want to answer that just now.

Don't do that. ➡

Please wait.

You are late. ➡

I think we need to hurry.

He is coming and you are not ready. ➡

Isn't he coming soon?

Do it this way. ➡

Let me show you how to do it.

We don't know that. ➡

We don't **really** know that.

He is always wrong. ➡

Sometimes we think he is wrong.

I don't want to do it now. ➡

Could we do it another time?

MORE TWO-WORD VERBS

to break

to break away

to break in

to break out

to break through

to break up

to bring

to bring away

to bring down

to bring out

to bring up

to build

to build on

to build up

to burst

to burst in

to burst out

to buy

to buy out

to buy up

to call

to call away

to call off

to call out

to call up

to clean

to clean out

to clean up

to clear

to clear out

to clear up

to cry

to cry out

to cry over

to die

to die away

to die out

to do

to do again

to do away

to do over

to drop

to drop in

to drop off

to drop out

to drop through

to fall

to fall across

to fall away

to fall in

to fall into

to fall out

to fall over

to fill

to fill in

to fill out

to fill up

to find

to find out

to follow

to follow through

to follow up

to get

to get ahead

to get away

to get down

to get lost

to get on

to get ready

MORE TWO-WORD VERBS (continued)

to get up	to hang around	to look down
to give	to hang on	to look in
to give away	to hang up	to look into
to give back	to keep	to look over
to give in	to keep apart	to look up
to give up	to keep away	to make
to go	to keep in	to make away
to go away	to keep inside	to make over
to go back	to keep on	to make into
to go down	to keep out	to make up
to go forward	to keep outside	to make do
to go in	to keep together	to pay
to go out	to keep up	to pay attention
to go over	to let	to pay in
to go through	to let down	to pay out
to go under	to let go	to pick
to go up	to let in	to pick over
to go with	to let through	to pick out
to hand	to let up	to pick through
to hand in	to lie	to pick up
to hand out	to lie down	to pull
to hand over	to look	to pull ahead
to hang	to look away	to pull away

MORE TWO-WORD VERBS (continued)

to pull in	to send away	to think
to pull into	to send in	to think about
to pull off	to send out	to think out
to pull out	to show	to think over
to pull over	to show off	to think through
to pull through	to show through	to try
to pull up	to show up	to try on
to put	to spread	to try out
to put away	to spread out	to turn
to put in	to spread over	to turn away
to put on	to spread under	to turn in
to put out	to take	to turn off
to put through	to take action	to turn on
to run	to take away	to turn out
to run across	to take control	to turn up
to run away	to take off	to work
to run in	to take on	to work on
to run into	to take out	to work over
to run out	to take over	to work through
to send	to take up	to work under

SOME PROBLEM WORDS

accept, except:

to accept = to receive; He **accepted** the book even though it was damaged.

to except = to exclude; I will **except** payment for the damaged book.

adapt, adopt:

to adapt = to become accustomed; She **adapted** well to the hot climate.

to adopt = to take as one's own; They **adopted** the baby after his parents died.

adverse, averse:

adverse = unfavorable; His response to the suggestion was **adverse**.

averse = opposed; He was **averse** to the suggestion.

affect, effect:

to affect = to influence; He wanted to **affect** change in the school.

effect = the result; The **effect** of the change will be important to the school.

all ready, already:

all ready = completely prepared; I was **all ready** to take my exam.

already = previously; I had **already** studied for the exam.

all together, altogether:

all together = everyone gathered; They will be **all together** at the airport.

altogether = entirely; It is **altogether** possible that the plane will be late.

SOME PROBLEM WORDS (continued)

allusion, illusion:

allusion = reference; They made **allusion** to the emergency.

illusion = false impression; The smoke gave the **illusion** of a serious accident.

anyone, any one:

anyone = any person at all; **Anyone** who was waiting over there may go in.

any one = a particular person in a group; **Any one** with a ticket may go in.

beside, besides:

beside = at the side of; He was standing **beside** the house.

besides = except; He took everything **besides** the things inside the house.

capital, capitol:

capital = city or wealth; Washington, D.C. is the United States' **capital**.

There is enough **capital** on hand to finish the project.

capitol = government building; The capitol is in Washington, D.C.

censor, censure:

to censor = to remove; The school librarian **censored** the book.

to censure = to criticize; The librarian **censured** the students for talking.

cite, site:

to cite = to quote; She did not **cite** enough references in her article.

site = a place; Her article described a **site** in New York.

SOME PROBLEM WORDS (continued)

climactic, climatic:

climactic = highest intensity; It was the **climactic** event of the day.

climatic = weather; The **climatic** conditions were excellent.

coarse, course:

coarse = rough; The road is covered with **coarse** rocks.

course = a study; The **course** will include everything to the advanced level.

complement, compliment:

to complement = to go with; That hat will **complement** her new coat.

to compliment = to flatter; I **complimented** her on her hat.

conscience, conscious:

conscience = moral principle; His **conscience** bothered him after he said it.

conscious = aware; He was **conscious** of his mistake.

continual, continuous:

continual = repeated regularly; The noise was **continual** throughout the day.

continuous = extended without interruption; It was a **continuous** problem.

elicit, illicit:

to elicit = to bring out; The police officer finally **elicited** the truth from him.

illicit = unlawful or immoral; He sold **illicit** drugs before.

SOME PROBLEM WORDS (continued)

emigrate, immigrate:

to emigrate = to leave a country; Their entire family **emigrated** from Russia.

to immigrate = to enter a country; Three of the brothers **immigrated** to the U.S.

eminent, imminent:

eminent = outstanding; The symphony's performance was **eminent**.

imminent = about to happen; The conductor's entrance was **imminent**.

everyone, every one:

everyone = unspecified number of people; **Everyone** was waiting.

every one = each individual; **Every one** will need a ticket to enter.

farther, further:

farther = distance; The house you are looking for is **farther** from here.

further = quantity or degree; It is still **further** up the road.

imply, infer:

to imply = to suggest; The author **implied** that his book was finished.

to infer = to conclude; We can **infer** that it will be another good book.

in, into

in = location; The house is **in** that direction.

into = direction; We walked **into** the house together.

SOME PROBLEM WORDS (continued)

lie, lay:

to lie = to recline or rest; Go ahead and **lie** down on the bed.

to lay = to put or place; You may **lay** your things over there.

loose, lose:

loose = not securely fastened; The money in his pocket was **loose**.

to lose = to misplace; If you are not careful, you will **lose** your money.

maybe, may be:

maybe = possibly; **Maybe** I can find another book if I hurry.

may be = might be; That **may be** the book you are looking for.

precede, proceed:

to precede = to come before; Her part in the play **preceded** the music.

to proceed = to go forward; They **proceeded** with the play even though it was late.

principal, principle:

principal = head of a school; The **principal** spoke to the students yesterday.

principle = a basic truth; He suggested that fairness be a **principle** of all behavior.

raise, rise:

to raise = to move upward; He **raised** the flag at sunrise.

to rise = to go up; You will need to **rise** early to see the sunrise.

SOME PROBLEM WORDS (continued)

respectfully, respectively:

respectfully = showing respect; The children **respectfully** helped their parents.

respectively = each in the order given; Their father and mother died **respectively**.

set, sit:

to set = to put or place; They **set** the plates on the table.

to sit = to be seated; They will **sit** at the table when they eat.

sometime, some time, sometimes:

sometime = at an unstated time; I will be here **sometime** before noon.

some time = a period of time; It was **some time** before she finally arrived.

sometimes = now and then; They **sometimes** arrive early.

there, their, they're:

there = place; Why don't you set the books **there** on the table?

their = ownership; They will want to get **their** books from off the table.

they're = they are; **They're** supposed to have their own books.

weather, whether:

weather = climate; I think the **weather** will be nice tomorrow.

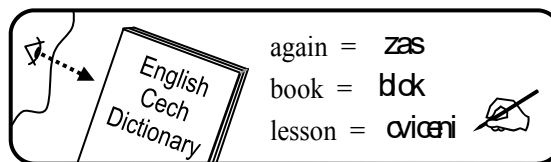
whether = choice; Decide tomorrow **whether** or not you want to come.

your, you're:

your = ownership; I think this is **your** coat.

you're = you are; **You're** not leaving your coat there, are you?

LESSON 16 VOCABULARY



advanced	course	loose
adverse	degree	maybe
airport	direction	mistake
all over	drug	moral
all ready	eminent	music
all together	entirely	nonetheless
allusion	even though	noon
altogether	exam	opening
any one	excellent	outstanding
article	fair, fairly, fairness	ownership
averse	false	particular, particularly
aware	flag	payment
baby	government	peace
basic	hat	plane
basket	head	plate
behavior	illicit	previous, previously
besides	illusion	principle
capital	imminent	project
climate, climactic	immoral	quantity
coarse	impression	reference
conductor	in order (to)	regular, regularly
conscience	individual	respect, respectfully
conscious	intensity	respective,
continual, continuous	level	respectively
convincing	library, librarian	reverence

rough, roughly	to censor	to lose
secure, securely	to censure	to lower
side	to change	to misplace
site	to cite	to pick
song	to clean	to precede
student	to complement	to proceed
sunrise	to compliment	to quote
suppose, supposedly	to conclude	to recline
symphony	to convince	to remove
ticket	to criticize	to revere
to adapt	to die	to suggest
to adopt	to dispute	unfavorable
to affect	to drop	unlawful
to arrive	to elicit	unspecified
to be	to emigrate	unstated
to be convinced	to except	upward
to be convincing	to exclude	wall
to be damaged	to fear	wealth, wealthy,
to be late	to flatter	wealthier, wealthiest
to be prepared	to hang	weather
to be seated	to hurry	whether
to be strengthened	to imply	without
to become	to infer	
accustomed	to influence	
to bother	to interrupt	
to break	to lie down	

Expressions

His proofs were so convincing that they could not answer him. (9:22)

After many days had gone by, they made plans to kill him. (9:23)

Day and night they watched the city gates in order to kill him. (9:23)

But one night they let him down through an opening in the wall. (9:25)

But one night they let him down through an opening in the wall. (9:25)

He tried to join the others. (9:26)

But they would not believe that he had changed. (9:26)

They were all afraid of him. (9:26)

Then his friend came to his help. (9:27)

He explained to them how he had seen their leader on the road. (9:27)

When they found out about this, they sent him away. (9:30)

Spoken English

Learned Quickly

Appendix

Information for the Student	A.1
Assignment Calendar	B.2
See More	C.1
Coming to the United States	D.1
The Journey of a Wise Man: A fable for English learners	E.1
A Wise Man's Discovery: A fable for English learners	F.1
Index of Tables	G.1
Vocabulary for Lessons 1-16	H.1
Common Irregular Verbs	I.1
More spoken English Study	J.1
Lesson Page Icons and Text Notations	K.1

Information for the Student

This course can be used by university students, professionals, and others who want to speak English well.

These lessons will help you learn to speak English in a short period of time. If you practice one or two hours each day with the lessons on the audio recordings, you should be able to speak simple English within six months. However, learning English will require hard work each day.

This course can be used by both beginning and advanced English students. The lessons are neither too difficult for a beginning student nor too easy for an advanced student. They can also be used by students who want to study without an instructor. However, you will learn better pronunciation if you practice for two hours each week with an English teacher.

There are three simple rules to follow in this English course:

1. ***To learn to speak English correctly, you must speak it aloud.***

It is important that you speak loudly and clearly when you are practicing with the recorded lessons.

2. ***To learn to speak English fluently, you must think in English.***

You are not "thinking" in English if you are reading your answers. Once you understand each exercise, it is very important that you respond without looking at the printed lesson. Making your mind work in order to think of the answer is an important part of learning a language.

3. ***The more you speak correct English aloud, the more quickly you will learn to speak fluently.***

Every lesson will be difficult when you start. However, as you practice, you will learn to speak correctly. You must practice until you can repeat the exercises fluently without looking at the printed lesson. We often tell our students, "You will learn best when your ears hear your mouth speaking correct English."

Assignment Calendar

Name_____

DAILY PRACTICE TIME

Week	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.	Sun.	Lesson / Review

Teacher's name_____

Phone number_____

Assignment Calendar

Name _____

DAILY PRACTICE TIME

Week	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.	Sun.	Lesson / Review
------	------	-------	------	--------	------	------	------	-----------------

[illegible]

COMING TO THE UNITED STATES

¹ Between 1850 and 1930, many people immigrated to the United States. Large groups came from non-English speaking countries such as Germany, Italy, Austria, Russia, Mexico, Sweden, Norway, Poland, China, and Japan. Most immigrants from these countries did not speak English when they arrived. Frequently, the adults learned only simple English. Their children learned English when they studied in American schools.

² During that period of time, there was a strong feeling among English-speaking Americans--and sometimes even among immigrant parents--that English was the only language that should be used. As a result, many immigrant children learned their parents' language when they were young, but stopped using it after they began attending American schools. They spoke only English unless they were talking to their parents or attending their parents' church. When these children became older, many could understand their parents' language but they could not speak it well. Equally, their parents could understand some English, but could not speak it fluently. This resulted in two languages being used in many homes. The parents used their own language when speaking to their children and the children responded in English.

³ It was good that the immigrant children learned English well. It was not good, however, that the attitude at the time resulted in the loss of their ability to speak two languages fluently.

⁴ Now that you live in the United States, there will be many advantages for you if you learn to speak English well. It is our hope that SPOKEN ENGLISH LEARNED QUICKLY will help you reach your goal of speaking fluent English. However, learning English must never reduce the value of your own language and cultural heritage. Always be proud of it. If you are a parent now-or when you have your own children-teach them your language and your culture.

⁵ Work hard to learn English well. But never forget your first language. Be proud of your language and cultural heritage.

THE JOURNEY OF A WISE MAN: A Fable for English Learners

¹ A long time ago, there was a wise man living in a mountain country. The country was beautiful. But it was always difficult to find enough food.

² The people of the High Country decided that they would travel together to the Low Country. When the snow began to melt, they packed all they owned into their wagons. With anticipation mixed with sadness, the wise man and his neighbors left their High Country homes.

³ The wise man noticed something strange taking place soon after they began their journey. As they traveled day after day, his right arm began to feel stiff. The further they traveled from the High Country, the weaker it became. Three things puzzled him. First, his arm always felt the weakest whenever they stopped in a village. Secondly, he noticed that when the travelers from the High Country gathered around a fire at night to talk among themselves, his arm became strong again.

⁴ His third discovery puzzled him the most. When he put his arm behind his back, it no longer felt stiff and useless.

⁵ One day the wise man was startled. As his wagon rounded a bend in a high mountain road, he looked down on his neighbors' wagons ahead of him. He realized that many others were also holding an arm behind their back. As he looked more closely, he saw that some older people had even tied their arm in place with a rope.

⁶ Why, he wondered, was this happening?

⁷ At last they reached the Low Country. The weather was warm. The fields would produce grain and the forests would supply lumber for their houses. Life looked promising. Promising, that is, except for their weak arms. It was rumored that the Low Country's air caused this strange weakness. Some of the people even said they must learn to live with this weakness if they wanted to stay in the Low Country.

⁸ The adults and children set to work. They cleared the land, planted crops, and prepared lumber to build their new homes. A High Country tailor sewed a new kind of coat that would hold the useless arm in place. He also put leather on the coat so the shoulder could push heavy loads. Even with the new coat, however, work was slow because everyone used only one arm.

⁹ Again, the wise man noticed a strange thing. First, he noticed that--even though it caused them pain--the children soon began using their weak arm again. Secondly,

the wise man noticed that whenever the High Country people met together in their first buildings, if they shut all the doors and windows, strength returned to the arms of even the oldest men and women. "Surely," most said, "this proves that the Low Country air is at fault." Most agreed that the only solution was to build houses so strong that all Low Country air could be kept outside. But the wise man was puzzled most because the children seemed to become stronger while playing and working outside in the Low Country air.

¹⁰ The wise man watched his High Country neighbors trying to build their houses while using only one arm. He became fearful for his people's welfare. The new coat helped them work faster with one arm. But winter was coming and neither the houses nor the crops would be ready if everyone continued to work with one arm behind their back.

¹¹ The wise man learned a lesson from the children. He realized that--even though it was painful--using his weak arm for hard work was the only way to make it strong again. Because winter was coming, he knew that he could not stop working on his house in order to spend all his time trying to make his arm strong. But he also knew that he could not finish his house before winter unless he used both arms. The wise man decided that if he was to finish his house before winter, he must spend some time each day strengthening his arm so that he could finish his house more quickly.

¹² The wise man spent time each day both strengthening his arm and working on his house. He finished his house before winter.

¹³ Some High Country people perished that winter because the snow came before their crops were harvested and their houses finished. They had worked slowly every day because they were afraid to stop working on their houses long enough to strengthen their weak arm.

¹⁴ If you live in the United States and cannot speak English well, you are living as though one arm was tied behind your back. You must work to support your family. But if you do not spend time each day learning English, you will be limited for the rest of your life. SPOKEN ENGLISH LEARNED QUICKLY was written so that you can study at home and still hold a job. If you will regularly study English each day for six months to a year, your English will greatly improve. You will be more able to earn higher wages, live more effectively in your community, and talk with your children as they learn English in school.

A WISE MAN'S DISCOVERY: A Fable for English Learners

¹ A long time ago, there was a wise man living in the Low Country. He and his neighbors had built new homes and started a new life.

² Their first winter in the Low Country was difficult because many had not finished their houses or harvested their crops before winter. When spring finally came, they knew that they must not only plant their crops, but they must also build a granary to store the coming harvest.

³ They talked much about the granary. When they lived in the High Country, they only needed to build it strong enough to keep Goat out. In the Low Country, they knew they also needed to consider Bear, Deer, and Elk. Because Bear was powerful, the granary must be very strong.

⁴ There was an old steel road that passed by their village. The large steam-breathing machines that once used this road no longer needed it. There was a huge iron box on wheels about a half hour's walk up the steel road from the village. All agreed that if the box could be pushed to the village, it could serve as a safe granary. Even Bear could not open the strong iron doors.

⁵ So the men tried to push the iron box to the village. But it was so heavy that they could barely make it move. All the men worked very hard. After much effort, they had pushed the box only as far as the length of a man's hand before they needed to rest. For two days they pushed and rested. Pushed and rested. Then they pushed and rested some more. At last, they were all exhausted. "It would take less work," they said, "to build a granary in the village than to move the iron box."

⁶ A new granary was built in the village. It held food during two winters. And then the drought came. The fields produced little grain. In the fall, few berries were found in the forest because Bear was taking almost everything for himself. Deer and Elk were eating all that was left. Still, because the people had been careful and worked hard, the granary held enough food to last them for the winter.

⁷ Then one night, just before Bear was ready to go to sleep for the winter, he smashed the granary door. He ate much of the food. After Bear left, Deer and Elk also filled their bellies.

⁸ During the cold, hard winter, when everyone was hungry, the wise man thought again about the iron box on the steel road. Certainly, he decided, there must be a way to move it to the village. Was it possible that the problem had been

that they had stopped to rest each time after moving the iron box only a short distance?

⁹ Early the next spring, the wise man had a plan. He took four young men with him to the iron box on wheels. Each man led his donkey.

¹⁰ The men first tied a long rope to the front of the iron box. Then they cut a tall tree for a pole and stood it upright. They threw the rope over the top of the pole. Finally, they fastened heavy rocks to the end of the rope. The wise man knew that the rope was pulling on the iron box even though it was not yet moving. Next, the wise man harnessed the donkeys to the iron box so that they could also pull. Finally, the wise man and the four young men pushed as hard as they could. The iron box slowly began to move.

¹¹ But the wise man's plan was different from the villagers' plan before. He and the young men did not stop to rest. Instead, even after the heavy rocks had reached the ground, the men kept pushing the iron box.

¹² The iron box on wheels did just what the wise man thought it would. The longer they pushed, the faster the iron box moved. They did not need to work as hard to keep it rolling once it began to move.

¹³ The wise man knew that if all of the village men would work together, they could move the iron box to the village. He knew that they would all need to work very hard to get the iron box to start moving. Then once it was moving some could rest and others could push. If they did not stop, they could slowly move the iron box to their village.

¹⁴ The next year, their food would be safe from Bear.

¹⁵ If you are beginning to study English with SPOKEN ENGLISH LEARNED QUICKLY, you know that learning any language is difficult. You may work hard for two or three weeks and it will seem like nothing is happening. However, learning to speak English is much like pushing a heavy car on a railroad track. It will take much effort at first. But if you keep working, you will see more and more progress.

TABLE INDEX	LESSON & PAGE		EXERCISE
THE VERB "TO BE"	Lesson 1	1:14	
THE ENGLISH QUESTION	Lesson 1	1:13	3.3
USING "A" OR "AN"	Lesson 1	1:15	
DAYS, MONTHS AND HOLIDAYS	Lesson 1	1:15	
"TO BE," "TO DO," "TO HAVE" AND "TO GO"	Lesson 2	2:19	2:4a, 2:4b, 8:5b, 12:5d
VERB TABLE	Lesson 3	3:19	
"CAN" AND "MAY"	Lesson 3	3:20	
WORDS THAT REPLACE A NAME	Lesson 5	5:25	
DOING SOMETHING WITHOUT HELP	Lesson 5	5:25	
MAKING A STRONG EMPHASIS	Lesson 5	5:26	
"TO," "TWO," AND "TOO"	Lesson 5	5:26	
HOW LONG DOES IT TAKE?	Lesson 5	5:27	
DOING TWO THINGS TOGETHER	Lesson 5	5:28	
PRONOUNCING "...ED"	Lesson 5	5:29	
PUTTING WORDS IN THEIR CORRECT PLACE	Lesson 6	6:21	
USING THE CORRECT WORD	Lesson 6	6:22	
USING APOSTROPHES	Lesson 7	7:20	8:2
EXAMPLES OF TWO WORDS BECOMING ONE	Lesson 7	7:21	
AIN'T IS NEVER CORRECT.	Lesson 7	7:22	
WORDS DESCRIBING LOCATION	Lesson 7	7:23	
WORDS THAT DESCRIBE	Lesson 8	8:18	13:7, 13:8
NUMBERS	Lesson 8	8:21	

"WILL" AND "MAY" OR "MIGHT"	Lesson 9	9:20	11:3, 11:4
HELPING VERBS	Lesson 9	9:21	
DON'T USE TWO NEGATIVES	Lesson 10	10:15	
THE VERB AGREES WITH ITS SUBJECT	Lesson 11	11:20	
THE USE OF "OTHER"	Lesson 11	11:20	
THE FAMILY	Lesson 11	11:21	
THE TIME OF THE VERB'S ACTION	Lesson 12	12:22	
"WHERE" AND "WHEN"	Lesson 12	12:23	
USING THE WORD "IF"	Lesson 12	12:24	
"THIS," "THAT," "THESE" AND "THOSE"	Lesson 13	13:23	13:3
USING "DO" TO EMPHASIZE	Lesson 13	13:23	13:5
WORDS DESCRIBING TIME	Lesson 13	13:24	
USING "YOU" IN ENGLISH	Lesson 13	13:25	
DOING OR RECEIVING THE ACTION	Lesson 14	14:23	14:3
USE THESE WORDS CORRECTLY	Lesson 14	14:23	
WHEN SOMETHING HAPPENS	Lesson 14	14:24	14:2, 14:8
"WHO" AND "THAT"	Lesson 14	14:25	14:7
TWO-WORD VERBS	Lesson 16	16:22	16:3
WORDS THAT CHANGE THE MEANING	Lesson 16	16:25	
SAYING THINGS POLITELY	Lesson 16	16:26	16:7
MORE TWO-WORD VERBS	Lesson 16	16:28	
SOME PROBLEM WORDS	Lesson 16	16:31	

VOCABULARY FOR LESSONS 1-16

The total **Spoken English Learned Quickly** vocabulary contains 1,923 words including 568 verb entries.

Irregular verbs are written in **bold** font. Verbs are listed under "to ..."

a or an	alive	anger
ability	all	angry, angrier,
about	all over	angriest, angrily
acceptance	all ready	ankle
accordance	all together	annoyance
according	allowance	another
across	allusion	answer
action	along	anticipation
addition	aloud	any one, anyone
address	alphabet	any, anything
adult	already	anybody
advanced	also	anything
advantage	altogether	anywhere
adverse	always	apostle
after	am (to be)	apostrophe
afternoon	ambulance	appeal
again	American	appearance
against	among	are (to be)
ago	amount	area code
agreement	ancestor	argument
air	and	arm
airport	angel	around

arrest	because	box
arrival	bed	bribe
article	before	bright, brighter,
as	beggar	brightest, brightly
astonishment	beginning	brother
at	behavior	brother-in-law
at least	behind	building
at once	believer	burial
attitude	belly	bus
attractive, attractively	belongings	bus stop
aunt	below	but
Austria	berry	by
authority	beside	by means of
averse	besides	can
aware	between	capital
away	beyond	car
baby	big, bigger, biggest	card
back	bite	care
bad, worse, worst,	bitterness, bitterly	carriage
badly	black, blacker,	cash
barely	blackest	cause
basic	body	census
basket	bold, bolder, boldest,	certain, certainty
bathroom	boldly	certainly
bear	book	charge
beautiful, beautifully	both	check

chief	condition	cultural, culturally
child, children	conductor	current, currently
China	confusion	dad
choice	conscience	dare
church	conscious	dark, darker, darkest,
city	consideration	darkness
claim	continual, continuous	dawn
class	continuation	day, daily
clean, cleaner,	control	days of the week
cleanest, cleanly	convert	Sunday
clear, clearer,	convincing	Monday
clearest, clearly	cool, cooler, coolest,	Tuesday
clearing	coolly	Wednesday
clever, cleverly	correct, correctly	Thursday
climate, climactic	cost	Friday
climber	could	Saturday
cloak	council	dead
close, closer, closest,	country	death
closely	course	deceitful, deceitfully
cloud	cousin	decision
coarse	creation	deed
coat	credit card	deep, deeper,
cold, colder, coldest,	crop	deepest, deeply,
coldly	crowd	depth
companion	cruel, cruelly	deer
complete, completely	cry	defeat

degree	driver's license	even
denial	drought	even though
descendant	drug	evening
devout	dull, duller, dullest	event
dictionary	during	every day, everyday
different	each	every one, everyone
difficult	ear	every, everything
difficult, difficulty	early, earlier, earliest	everywhere
direction	earth	exam.
disagreement	education	example
disappearance	effort	excellent.
disciple	either	except
discovery	elk	excess
discussion	else	excitement
disgrace	emergency	exclamation
distance	eminent	excuse me
distribution	emphasis	<i>EXERCISE</i>
do (to do)	end	exhaustion
does (to do)	English	expectation
donkey	enough	explanation
door	entirely	expression
doubt	entrance	extra
down	envy	extreme, extremely
drawing	equal, equally	eye
drink	Ethiopia	fact, factually
driver	eunuch	fair, fairly, fairness

faith, faithfully	fish	gas station
fall (season)	flag	gate
false, falsely	fluent, fluently	gathering
family	follower	generation
famous, famously	following	Germany
far, farther, farthest, farther	food	gift
fast, faster, fastest	foot, feet	glad, gladly
fat, fatter, fattest	for	glory
father	for the sake	goal
fault	force	goat
favor	forest	good
fear, fearful, fearfully	forgiveness	good afternoon
feeling	form	good evening
fellow	frequent, frequently	good morning
fellowship	friend	good, better, best
few, fewer, fewest	friendly, friendlier, friendliest	goodbye
field	from	government
fight	front	grain
filling	full, fuller, fullest, fully	granary
final, finally	funds	grand nephew
finances	furiously, furiously	grand niece
fine, finer, finest	further, furthest	grand parents
fire	future	grand, grander, grandest
fire department	gas (gasoline)	grandchildren
first		granddaughter

grandfather,	hard, harder, hardest	his
granddad, grandpa	harness	holiday
grandmother,	harvest	holidays
grandma	hat	New Year's Day
grandson	he	Valentine's Day
grave	head	Easter
great aunt	health	Memorial Day
great grandfather	health card (number)	Independence Day
great grandmother	healthy, healthier,	Labor Day
great grandparents	healthiest	Thanksgiving
great uncle	heat	Hanukkah
great, great	heaven	Christmas
grandparents	heavy, heavier,	holy, holier, holiest
great, greater, greatest,	heaviest, heavily	home
greatly	hello (hi)	hope
Greek	help	hospital
groceries	her	hot, heat
ground	here	hot, hotter, hottest
group	heritage	hour
growth	hers	house
guard	herself	how
half-hour	high, height	how much
hand	high, higher, highest,	however
handle	highly	huge
happy, happier,	him	human, humanly
happiest, happily	himself	

hungry, hungrier, hungriest, hungrily	identical	kind, kinder, kindest, kindly
hurt	individual	king
husband	inevitable	kingdom
I	infrequently	lame
I am (I'm) (to be)	inside	land
identification (ID)	instead	language
if	instruction	large
ignorant, ignorantly, ignorance	insurance	large, larger, largest, largely
illicit	intensity	last
illusion	into	late, later, latest
imminent	introduction	law
immoral	invitation	leader
impolite	iron	leather
important, importantly	irregular verb	left (hand)
impossible, impossibly, impossibility	is (to be)	<i>LESSON</i>
impression	it	letter
in	Italy	level
in order (to)	its	library, librarian
in the care of	jail	license (number)
indeed	Japan	lie
indeed	jealous, jealously	life
	journey	light
	joy, joyful, joyfully	light (illumination)
	judge	
	judgment	
	jump	

light, lighter, lightest, lightly	mean, meaner, meanest, meanly	July August
line	meaning	September
little, littler, littlest	meantime	October
load	medical	November
local	meeting	December
lock	member	moral
long ago	message	more
long, length	messenger	morning
long, longer, longest	Mexico	most, mostly
loose, loosely	might	mother
loud, louder, loudest, loudly	might, mighty	mountain
low, lower, lowest, lowly	mine	movement
lumber	miracle	much
machine	mistake	murder
magic	mix	murderer
man, men	mom	music
many	money	must
mat	month	my
maternal	months of the year	myself
may	January	nail
maybe	February	name
me	March	native
meal	April	near, nearer, nearest, nearly
	May	
	June	

neat, neater, neater,	nor	sixteen
neatly	normal	seventeen
negative	Norway	eighteen
neglect	not	nineteen
neighbor	nothing	twenty
neither	notice	twenty one
nephew	now	twenty two
never	nowhere	thirty
new, newer, newest	number	thirty three
news	numbers	thirty four
newspaper	zero	forty
next	one	forty five
nice, nicer, nicest,	two	forty six
nicely	three	fifty
niece	four	fifty seven
night, nightly	five	fifty eight
no	six	sixty
no longer	seven	sixty nine
nobody	eight	seventy
noise	nine	eighty
noisy, noisier,	ten	ninety
noisiest, noisily	eleven	hundred
none	twelve	thousand
non-English	thirteen	first
nonetheless	fourteen	second
noon	fifteen	third

fourth	opportunity	particular,
fifth	opposition	particularly
sixth	or	party
seventh	order	passage
eighth	ordinary, ordinarily,	past
ninth	(extraordinary)	paternal
tenth	origin, originally	payment
o'clock	other, others	peace, peaceful,
obedience	our	peacefully
occasion,	ours	performance
occasionally	ourselves	performer
of	out	period
offering	outside	permission
office	outstanding	persecution
officer	over, overly	person, people
official	own	personal
often	owner	(identification)
okay (OK)	ownership	personal
old man (slang)	package	(identification)
old woman (slang)	pain, painful,	personal, personally
old, older, oldest	painfully	phone (number)
once, at once	paralytic	(telephone)
one	parent	place
only	parent	plain, plainly
open, openly	part	plan
opening		plane

plant	prisoner	railroad
plate	probable, probably,	rarely
play	probability	reader
please	problem	realization
pleasure, pleasant	proclamation	receipt
Poland	production	recognition
pole	progress, progression	reference
police	project	refutation
porch	promise	regular verb
possible, possibility,	pronunciation	regular, regularly
possibly	proof	religious, religiously
power, powerful,	property	remainder
powerfully	prophet	repentance
practice	proposal	reply
praise	proud, proudly	report
prayer	province	respect, respectfully
preacher	public, publicly	respective,
preparation	punishment	respectively
presence	purpose	response
present	puzzle	responsible,
presentation	quantity	responsibly
previous, previously	quarrel	rest
priest	queen	result
principal	question	resurrection
principle	quick, quicker,	return
prison	quickest, quickly	reverence

review	schedule	simple, simpler,
rich, richer, richest	school	simplest, simply
right (correct)	scripture	sin
right (hand)	sea	since
right now	second, secondly	singer
right side	secure, securely	sister
road	seldom	sister-in-law
rock	sentence	site
rope	separate	sky
rough, roughly,	servant	slang
roughness	shadow	sleep
rumor	shall	sleepy, sleepier,
run	shameful, shamefully	sleepiest
runner	share	slim, slimmer,
Russia	sharp, sharper,	slimmest
sad, sadder, saddest,	sharpest, sharply	slow, slower,
sadly	short, shorter,	slowest, slowly
safe, safer, safest,	shortest	small, smaller,
safely	should	smallest
sake	shoulder	smart, smarter,
sale	shy, shyer, shyest,	smartest
same	shyly	smooth, smoother,
savings	sibling	smoothest,
savior	sick, sicker, sickest	smoothly
saying	side	snow
scales	sight	so

society	strict, stricter,	text
solution	strictest, strictly	thank you (thanks)
some, something	strong, stronger,	that
someone	strongest, strongly,	the
sometime,	strength	their
sometimes	student	theirs
son	such	them
song	sudden, suddenly	themselves
soon	sunrise	then
south	suppose, supposedly	there
spirit	surely	these
spouse	surprise	they
spring (season)	Sweden	thick, thickness
statement	sweet, sweeter,	thin, thinner, thinnest
station	sweetest, sweetly	thing
steam	symphony	this
steel	table	those
stiff	tailor	though
still	talk	thought
stone	tall, taller, tallest	threat
stop (to stop)	teacher	three
store	telephone	three, third
straight, straighter,	tense	through
straightest	terrible, terribly	throughout
strange, strangest,	test	ticket
strangely	testimony	

tight, tighter, tightest,
tightly
time
tiny, tinier, tiniest
to
to abandon
to accept
to adapt
to add
to adopt
to affect
to agree
to allow
to announce
to annoy
to answer
to appeal
to appear
to argue
to arise
to arrest
to arrive
to arrive
to ask
to astonish
to attend

to awake
to be (am, is, are,
was, were)
to be able
to be afraid
to be ahead
to be amazed
to be among
to be annoyed
to be arrested
to be at fault
to be bitter
to be buried
to be called
to be careful
to be carried
to be chosen
to be closed
to be completed
to be confused
to be contrary
to be converted
to be convinced
to be convincing
to be correct
to be crucified

to be damaged
to be difficult
to be drunk
to be excited
to be exhausted
to be far away
to be filled
to be fixed
to be furious
to be glad
to be healed
to be hurt
to be in charge
to be in line
to be kept
to be lame
to be late
to be left
to be open
to be opposed
to be out of
to be paralyzed
to be pleased
to be possible
to be powerful
to be prepared

to be puzzled	to belong	to call out
to be questioned	to bend	to call up
to be ready	to bite	to carry
to be responsible	to bless	to catch
to be right	to blow	to cause
to be rumored	to bother	to censor
to be scattered	to break	to censure
to be seated	to break away	to change
to be separated	to break in	to choose
to be set	to break out	to cite
to be shaken	to break through	to claim
to be sick	to break up	to clean
to be startled	to breath	to clean out
to be strengthened	to bribe	to clean up
to be strong	to bring	to clear
to be surprised	to bring away	to clear out
to be taken	to bring down	to clear up
to be taken away	to bring out	to climb
to be taken up	to bring up	to cling
to be terrified	to build	to come
to be wise	to burst	to complement
to beat	to bury	to compliment
to become	to buy	to conclude
to beg	to call	to consider
to begin	to call away	to continue
to believe	to call off	to convince

to cost

to cover

to create

to criticize

to cry

to cry out

to cry over

to cut

to dare

to deal

to decide

to defeat

to deny

to depend

to describe

to destroy

to die

to die away

to die out

to dig

to disappear

to discover

to discuss

to dispute

to distribute

to dive**to do**

to do again

to do away

to do over

to doubt

to drag

to draw

to dress

to drink**to drive**

to drop

to drop in

to drop off

to drop out

to drop through

to eat

to elicit

to emigrate

to emphasize

to enable

to enter

to except

to exclaim

to exclude

to expect

to explain

to fall

to fall across

to fall away

to fall in

to fall into

to fall out

to fall over

to fasten

to fault

to fear

to feel**to fight**

to fill

to fill in

to fill out

to fill up

to find

to find out

to finish

to fix

to flash

to flatter

to fly

to follow

to follow through

to follow up

to force	to go through	to hope
to forget	to go under	to hurry
to forgive	to go up	to hurt
to freeze	to go with	to identify
to gather	to grant	to immigrate
to get	to grind	to imply
to get ahead	to grow	to include
to get away	to guard	to indicate
to get down	to hand	to infer
to get lost	to hand in	to influence
to get on	to hand out	to interrupt
to get ready	to hand over	to introduce
to get up	to handle	to invite
to give	to hang	to join
to give away	to hang around	to judge
to give back	to hang on	to jump
to give in	to hang up	to keep
to give up	to happen	to kill
to go	to harness	to kneel
to go away	to harvest	to know
to go back	to have	to last
to go down	to heal	to lay
to go forward	to hear	to lead
to go in	to help	to learn
to go out	to hide	to leave
to go over	to hold	to lend (A16)

to let

to let down

to let go

to let in

to let through

to let up

to lie

to lie down

to light

to like

to listen

to live

to lock

to look

to look away

to look down

to look in

to look into

to look over

to look up

to loose

to lose

to lower

to make

to make

to make

(something)

move

to make an effort

to make away

to make do

to make into

to make over

to make up

to matter

to mean

to meet

to melt

to misplace

to mix

to mourn

to move

to murder

to nail

to need

to neglect

to note

to notice

to obey

to offer

to open

to oppose

to order

to owe

to own

to pack

to pass

to pay

to pay attention

to pay out

to pay up

to perform

to perish

to persecute

to pick

to pick over

to pick through

to pick up

to place

to plan

to plant

to play

to please

to pour

to practice

to praise

to preach

to precede	to put on	to report
to prepare	to put out	to respond
to present	to put through	to rest
to proceed	to puzzle	to result
to proclaim	to quarrel	to return
to produce	to question	to revere
to promise	to quote	to review
to pronounce	to raise	to ride
to prophesy	to reach	to ring
to propose	to read	to rise
to prove	to realize	to rot
to pull	to receive	to round
to pull ahead	to recline	to run
to pull away	to recognize	to run across
to pull in	to record	to run away
to pull into	to reduce	to run in
to pull off	to refute	to run into
to pull out	to reject	to run out
to pull over	to remain	to rush
to pull through	to remember	to save
to pull up	to remove	to say
to punish	to repair	to scatter
to push	to repeat	to see
to put	to repent	to seem
to put away	to replace	to sell
to put in	to reply	to send

to send away	to spend	to suppose
to send in	to spin	to swear
to send out	to spread	to swim
to separate	to spread out	to swing
to serve	to spread over	to take
to set	to spread under	to take action
to set free	to spring	to take away
to sew	to stand	to take control
to shake	to stare	to take off
to shake off	to start	to take on
to share	to startle	to take out
to shoot	to stay	to take over
to show	to stay	to take up
to show off	to steal	to talk
to show through	to sting	to teach
to show up	to stir	to tell
to shrink	to stone	to test
to shut	to stop	to testify
to sing	to store	to think
to sink	to strengthen	to think about
to sit	to strike	to think out
to slay	to study	to think over
to sleep	to substitute	to think through
to smash	to suffer	to threaten
to sound	to suggest	to throw
to speak	to supply	to tie

to touch	to witness	under
to travel	to wonder	unfavorable
to trouble	to work	United States
to try	to worship	unknown
to try on	to wrap	unlawful
to try out	to wring	unless
to turn	to write	unlikely
to turn away	today	unspecified
to turn in	together	unstated
to turn off	tomorrow	until
to turn on	tongue	up
to turn out	too	upon
to turn up	tooth, teeth	upright
to understand	top	upward
to urge	toward	us
to use	town	usually
to vow	track	value
to wait	travel	verb
to wake	treasury	very
to walk	tree	village
to want	trouble	violence
to warn	true	violent, violently,
to watch	twin	vision
to wear	two	vocabulary
to whip	ugly, uglier, ugliest	voice
to will	uncle	vow

wall	whether	without
warm, warmer,	which	witness
warmest, warmly	while	woman, women
warning	whip	wonder
was (to be)	white, whiter, whitest	word
watch	who	work
water	whole	world
way	whom	worship
weak, weaker,	whose	worthy, worthily
weakest	why	would
weak, weakness	wicked, wickedly	wrapping
wealth, wealthy,	wide, width	writing
wealthier,	widow	year
wealthiest	wife	yes
weather	wife	yesterday
week	will	yet
well	will not (won't)	you, your
were (to be)	wind	young, younger,
what	windy	youngest
wheel	winter	yours
when	wisdom	yourself
where	with	yourselves

COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS

The exercise for a verb is indicated in the (parenthetical notation).

Present		Past	he, she, it
I, you, we, they	he, she, it	I, he, she, it, you, we, they	<i>is, was, will</i> (be) he, she, it <i>has</i> (been)
arise	arises	arose	arisen
awake	awakes	awoke	awakened
be— am, are (2.4a, 3.6a, 5.1a, 7.5b, 9.2a, 9.2d, 11.2a, 12.2c, 13.2b, 14.2a)	is	was, were	will be (have, has) been
beat	beats	beat	beaten
become (7.3a)	becomes	became	become
begin (2.8c)	begins	began	begun
bend	bends	bent	bent
bite (7.3d)	bites	bit	bitten
blow (14.6d)	blows	blew	blown
break (16.2b)	breaks	broke	broken
bring (16.6a)	brings	brought	brought
build (7.3e)	builds	built	built
burst	bursts	burst	burst
buy (16.6g)	buys	bought	bought
catch	catches	caught	caught
choose (2.6a)	chooses	chose	chosen
cling	clings	clung	clung
come (2.8a)	comes	came	come
cost (3.6c)	costs	cost	cost
cut	cuts	cut	cut
deal	deals	dealt	dealt
dig	digs	dug	dug
dive	dives	dove	dived
do (2.4b)	does	did	done
draw (12.5a)	draws	drew	drawn
drink (13.6a)	drinks	drank	drunk
drive (8.5e)	drives	drove	driven

Present		Past	he, she, it <i>is, was, will</i> (be) he, she, it <i>has</i> (been)
I, you, we, they	he, she, it	I, he, she, it, you, we, they	
eat (14.6e)	eats	ate	eaten
fall (11.6a)	falls	fell	fallen
feel (16.6e)	feels	felt	felt
fight (12.5b)	fight	fought	fought
find (16.6c)	finds	found	found
fly (13.6d)	flies	flew	flown
forget (5.1g)	forgets	forgot	forgotten
forgive (6.2d)	forgives	forgave	forgiven
freeze	freezes	froze	frozen
get (7.3b)	gets	got	gotten
give (2.4d)	gives	gave	given
go (8.5b)	goes	went	gone
grind (14.6b)	grinds	ground	ground
grow (9.6d)	grows	grew	grown
hang (suspend) (16.2a)	hangs	hung	hung
have (12.5d)	has	had	had
hear (16.6f)	hears	heard	heard
hide (3.6f, 5.12d)	hides	hid	hidden
hold (6.6a)	holds	held	held
hurt	hurts	hurt	hurt
keep (9.6b)	keeps	kept	kept
kneel (14.6c)	kneels	knelt	knelt
know (3.6b, 5.12a)	knows	knew	known
lay (put) (11.6c)	lays	laid	laid
lead	leads	led	led
leave (2.8b, 5.1d)	leaves	left	left
lend	lends	lent	lent
let (allow) (6.6b)	lets	let	let
lie (recline)	lies	lay	lain
light	lights	lit	lit
lose (8.5g)	loses	lost	lost
make (16.6b)	makes	made	made
mean	means	meant	meant

Present		Past	he, she, it <i>is, was, will</i> (be) he, she, it <i>has</i> (been)
I, you, we, they	he, she, it	I, he, she, it, you, we, they	
meet (3.6e, 5.1h, 11.6b)	meets	met	met
prove (2.2d)	proves	proved	proved or proven
put (7.5e, 9.6a)	puts	put	put
read (11.6d)	reads	read	read
ride (16.6d)	rides	rode	ridden
ring	rings	rang	rung
rise (get up) (9.6c)	rises	rose	risen
run (8.5c)	runs	ran	run
say (3.6d, 5.12c)	says	said	said
see (2.6b, 6.6c)	sees	saw	seen
sell	sells	sold	sold
send (8.5d)	sends	sent	sent
set (place)	sets	set	set
shake	shakes	shook	shaken
shoot (14.6f)	shoots	shot	shot
shrink	shrinks	shrank	shrunk
shut	shuts	shut	shut
sing (8.5f)	sings	sang	sung
sink	sinks	sank	sunk
sit	sits	sat	sat
slay	slays	slew	slain
sleep (12.5c)	sleeps	slept	slept
speak (2.6c, 5.1i)	speaks	spoke	spoken
spend (6.6d)	spends	spent	spent
spin	spins	spun	spun
spring	springs	sprang	sprung
stand (3.6c, 5.12b)	stands	stood	stood
steal (13.6b)	steals	stole	stolen
sting	stings	stung	stung
strike	strikes	struck	stricken
swear	swears	swore	sworn
swim	swims	swam	swum
swing	swings	swung	swung

Present		Past	he, she, it <i>is, was, will</i> (be) he, she, it <i>has</i> (been)
I, you, we, they	he, she, it	I, he, she, it, you, we, they	
take (11.2c)	takes	took	taken
teach (2.4c, 5.1e)	teaches	taught	taught
tell (2.8e)	tells	told	told
think (8.5a)	thinks	thought	thought
throw (7.3c)	throws	threw	thrown
understand	understands	understood	understood
wake	wakes	woke	waked
wear (14.6a)	wears	wore	worn
wring	wrings	wrung	wrung
write (2.8d)	writes	wrote	written

MORE SPOKEN ENGLISH STUDY

After you finish the SPOKEN ENGLISH LEARNED QUICKLY lessons, there are three things you can do which will help you increase your ability to speak fluent English.

I. Listen to the voice recordings

When you finish all of the lessons in the *Spoken English Student Workbook*, you will have learned much about spoken English and you will have a large vocabulary. But you will not be a fluent English speaker. Fluent speech is more than knowing vocabulary and using correct sentences. Before you will be able to speak fluently—and be understood well by English listeners—you must be able to speak with the same rhythm and pronunciation as an English speaker. *For most students, learning the rhythm and pronunciation of a new language will take more effort and time than learning vocabulary and grammar.*

The best way to learn the correct rhythm and pronunciation of English is to use the SPOKEN ENGLISH LEARNED QUICKLY CDs. For at least one year after you have finished the *Spoken English Student Workbook* lessons, you should use the voice recordings for at least one hour each day. Listen and repeat each exercise (without looking at the book) just as you did when you were studying the lessons. Continue using the voice recordings until you can respond with exactly the same rhythm and pronunciation as the voice on the CD.

It will take more effort to work each day on your English rhythm and pronunciation than it did to do the lessons. However, if you want to learn to speak English well, practicing speaking using an English accent is the only way you can succeed. (A language's *accent* is its rhythm and pronunciation.)

II. Read a newspaper

Reading a newspaper is another excellent way to practice spoken English. Most newspapers use important English vocabulary words. A newspaper will give you many common political, scientific, economic, and technical words. The Test of English as a Foreign Language (TOEFL) exams often use words that are frequently found in English newspapers.

However, using a newspaper to study spoken English will require that you do more than merely reading an article once. When you chose a newspaper article to study, you must read it a number of times and read it aloud. You must always look up words you do not know in your dictionary and attempt to use these new words and expressions when you speak.

1. Print an article from a newspaper web site. (Always select a newspaper from the country using the English you are studying.)
2. First, read the article *out loud* looking for *new vocabulary*.
3. Whenever you read a word you do not know, stop and find it in your English dictionary.
4. Write the English words you do not know in a notebook. Then write the meaning of the word in your own language.
5. If a word you do not know is used more than twice in an article, put a check mark (✓) by it. The check mark means that the word should receive special study.
6. You do not need to write names of places or people in your notebook.
7. After you finish reading the article for the first time, review the meaning of all the new vocabulary words you wrote in your notebook. Study these words enough so that you know what they mean when you read the article.
8. Now read the entire article *aloud* for *fluency* practice. Try reading the article as smoothly as possible without stopping. Read it aloud twice. Your purpose is to read it so that an English speaking person could easily understand what you are saying.
9. Read the article again for *meaning*. *Always read aloud*. If you do not understand a sentence, stop and figure out exactly what it means.
 - a. If some of the meanings you have written in your notebook do not make sense in the article, find the word again in your dictionary and see if it has other meanings. Write the meaning in your notebook that makes the most sense as a *second meaning* for that word.
 - b. If you still cannot figure out the meaning of a sentence, it may be because two or three words are used together as an *expression*. Try to figure out the meaning of expressions. Look for similar expressions in other articles. If

you cannot figure out the meaning of an expression, you may need to ask an English speaking person about it.

10. Identify expressions as you read. Use a special mark to identify all the words of an expression in the articles.
 - a. Try substituting other words while using the same expression. Say or write several sentences using the same expression. For example, you may read a sentence in a newspaper which says, "Governor Mitchell announced Friday he will not run for another term, **putting to rest** months of speculation about his future intentions." "Putting to rest" is an expression which means "ending." (The sentence means that the Governor was "ending months of speculation about his future intentions.") Try writing sentences using the new expression. Most expressions can be used in different tenses with different people or things. For example, the expression "to put to rest" can be used in the present, "I want to put it to rest," in the future, "he will put his argument to rest," or in the past, "they finally put their rivalry to rest."
 - b. Many times, English uses *forms* of words as a type of expression. For example, you may read a sentence in a newspaper which says, "We're getting all kinds of calls from people who are **panicking** and **asking** what they can do." This form of expression uses two (or more) words ending in "...ing" to describe two (or more) actions that the same person is doing at one time. Substitute other words while using the same form of the expression. Try writing several different sentences. You might say, "Parents are *taking* their children from school and *going* home." "The children were *finishing* their lessons and *leaving* for lunch." Or, "We were *sitting* on the grass, *listening* to the concert."
11. For more fluency practice, continue **reading the article aloud** until you can read it at the same speed that an English speaker talks. Practice until your **pronunciation** sounds like that of an English speaker.
12. Your purpose is not merely to learn the vocabulary in these articles, but to learn to **speak** English correctly. Keep practicing until you can read the article aloud so that an English-speaking person could clearly understand what you are saying.
13. Select other newspaper articles and **continue reading aloud** while you look for new vocabulary words. When you find a word in your notebook that you have already checked (✓), place a second check (✓✓) by it. Any word in your notebook with two checks should be memorized as a word you need to know.